ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.12 Extracts from Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary; p.101 Adapted extract from ‘A new goal for football stars: to spread love of languages’ by Richard Garner, 8 October 2008 from The Independent. Reproduced by permission.


Illustrations by: David Cameron; Colin Elgie p.144; Clive Goddard 17, 45, 47, 52, 110, 118; Sarah Kelly 14, 19, 24, 42, 43, 74, 79, 126, 132; Harry Venning 20, 58, 130.

Cover illustration by: Carol Verryn.

The authors and publisher would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy pp.9 (Mark Andersen/RubberBall), 29 (Lisa Y. Young), 31 (Photosimdia/Batch/Photosimdia.com LLC), 39 (Ben/David J. Green - Lifestyle), 39 (Emily/DMAC), 41 (Picturenet/Picturenet), 61 (Steve Nagy/Design Pics Inc), 64 (couple/Gino’s Premium Images), 64 (stucco/woodboard), 69 (Radius Images), 70 (Yuri Ancrus/INSADCO Photography), 73 (Lesopeticke/ACVAPhotography), 80 (Chloe/81a), 80 (Luke/Chris Rout), 82 (Jo Ann/MatthiolaC), 82 (bloody/23/foodfolio), 87 (IIE060/Image Source), 89 (Ralph Henning), 95 (Frank and Helena/Cultura RM), 96 (Peter Tittmuss), 97 (duck/D. Hurst), 99 (Charles Stirling/Travel), 102 (Plattform/Johegn Images), 125 (Mark Bolton), 134 (Black Forest/Mathias Dietrich), 134 (skiing/Culture/Phil Lee Harvey), 134 (broken marriage/artpartner-images.com), 134 (dog/fantapix); Construction Photography p.113 (Damian Gillie); Getty Images pp.18 (Kraig Scarbey/Digital Vision), 32 (Chris Ryan/OJO Images), 33 (Barry Austin Photography/Riser), 51 (Bill Street Studios/Blend Images), 60 (Digital Vision), 62 (Susan Weiers/CutOutImages), 63 (rubberball), 71 (Stockbyte), 83 (Photodisc/Exuma/Cole Group), 84 (Thinkstock Images/Comstock Images), 94 (Justin Lightley/Photographer’s Choice RF), 97 (woman photo/Digital Vision), 98 (Adam Burto/Robert Harding World Imagery), 100 (Melissa Majchrzak/MLS via Getty Images), 101 (Phil Cole), 112 (Takuya Matsunaga/Alto), 115 (John Lund/Marc Romanelli/Blend Images); image100 p.30 (woman); 1stockphoto.com pp.78 (Mike Cherim), 82 (Kima/Niko Guido), 97 (woman illustration/Janne Alho), 105 (Crazy cat/Regina Makohonko), 105 (erin/sin Snyder), 105 (Leroy shino-b), 106 (David Mingay); Photolibrary.com p.66 (Peter Gridley); Royalty-free pp.26 (Chris King), 68 (woman/Gareth Boden), 73 (Moonlover/Photodisc), 73 (Starlight/Digital Vision), 73 (Discomana/Photodisc), 73 (Amat/Digital Vision), 73 (indy/Image Source), 97 (man/Photodisc)

Artwork sourced by: Pictureresearch.co.uk

The authors and publishers would like to thank the teachers and students from Argentina, Brazil, Czech Republic, France, Greece, Indonesia, Italy, Norway, Serbia, and Poland who helped with the development of this book.

They would also like to thank Maggie Baigent, Rachel Godfrey, Carol Tabor, Michael Terry, and Scott Thorburn for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text; and Suzanne Williams for the picture research.

For about you answers, they would like to thank Leticia Ansaldi, Eleni Babalouta, Abd al-Qadir Dar’ous, Karla Dávile, Raquel Montalbán, Carla Montefilio, Silvia Santinelli, Melanie Steyn, Eva Trubacova, Mayra Aixa Villar, and Maria Wenger.

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462012 3

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP
Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University’s objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in
Oxford New York
Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Tokyo
With offices in
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam
Oxford and Oxford English are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries
© Oxford University Press 2011
The moral rights of the author have been asserted
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)
First published 2011
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
Contents

Introduction 5
Abbreviations 7

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs
1 What are idioms? 8
2 Types of idiom 10
3 Finding idioms in a dictionary 12
4 The grammar of phrasal verbs 14
5 Core meanings 1 16
6 Core meanings 2 18
7 Different meanings of phrasal verbs 20
Review 22

Thinking, learning, and knowledge
8 I can follow classroom language 26
9 I can talk about learning 28
10 I can talk about exams 30
11 I can talk about ability and progress 32
12 I can talk about thought processes 34
13 I can talk about knowledge and skills 35
Review 36

Communicating with people
14 I can talk about getting in touch 39
15 I can describe ways of saying things 40
16 I can talk about phoning 41
17 I can use short spoken phrases 42
18 I can use phrases with say, tell, and see 44
19 I can use common spoken responses 46
20 I can understand and leave messages 48
21 I can say what I think 50
22 I can talk about jokes that go wrong 52
Review 54

People and relationships
23 I can describe actions 58
24 I can talk about my family 60
25 I can talk about different generations 62
26 I can talk about neighbours 64
27 I can describe my feelings 66
28 I can describe romantic relationships 68
29 I can describe annoying habits 70
30 I can talk about astrology 72
Review 74
## Everyday topics

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>I can describe the weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>I can talk about sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>I can talk about spending and saving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>I can talk about diets and cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>I can understand crime reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>I can talk about work experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>I can describe a small business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>I can talk about shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Out and about

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>I can describe social activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>I can describe outdoor activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>I can talk about holidays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>I can talk about team sports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>I can talk about situations on the road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Concepts

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>I can say what I want or need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>I can discuss plans and arrangements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>I can talk about likes and interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>I can describe damage and repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>I can say how things begin and end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>I can talk about time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>I can talk about numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>I can talk about problems and solutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>I can give advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Language

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>I can use link phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>I can use fixed phrases with two key words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>I can use prepositional phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>I can use phrasal verbs as commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>I can use verb-based idioms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>I can use key verbs: <em>get</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>I can use key verbs: <em>take</em> and <em>look</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>I can use key verbs: <em>come</em> and <em>go</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Idioms – some interesting histories | 144 |
Answer key | 145 |
Answer key to review units | 166 |
List of spotlight boxes | 175 |
Word list/Index | 176 |
Key words | 187 |
Introduction

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs forms part of the Oxford Word Skills vocabulary series. It is a series of two books for students to learn, practise, and revise everyday English idioms and phrasal verbs.

**Intermediate:** intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
**Advanced:** advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 1,000 new idioms and phrasal verbs in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

**How are the books organized?**

Each book contains 60 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are one or two pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:
- an answer key for all the exercises
- an answer key for the review units
- a list of all the idioms and phrasal verbs taught, with a unit reference to where each item appears
- a separate list of key words with unit references
- a page featuring the histories behind some of the idioms in the book (look on the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more).

**What are idioms and phrasal verbs? Why teach them together?**

**Idioms** are usually defined as groups of words whose overall meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words. So, *over the moon* has nothing to do with the literal meaning of 'the moon': it means 'extremely happy or excited'. An organization that *changes hands* passes from one owner to another; and if you are *in someone's way*, you are stopping them from moving or doing something. As these examples illustrate, in some idioms the meaning can be almost impossible to guess out of context, while others are more transparent.

**Phrasal verbs** consist of two and occasionally three words: a base verb and at least one particle (preposition or adverb). Many phrasal verbs are idiomatic: in other words, the meaning of the verb and particle is different from the base verb on its own. For example, the meanings of *give up* and *give in* are quite different from the meaning of *give*. As with idioms, some phrasal verbs are more transparent than others, e.g. *stand up* and

the most common sense of *stand* are very similar in meaning, as are *sit down* and *sit*. In other words, phrasal verbs can be seen as a type of idiom, although they are often singled out for specific attention in language-teaching materials.

Putting idioms and phrasal verbs together has a linguistic rationale, but perhaps an even greater pedagogic one. A relatively short passage of text—a practical necessity in most language-teaching materials—does not normally produce nine or ten naturally occurring phrasal verbs, but it can easily yield that number if the target language includes both phrasal verbs and idioms. This makes it easier to present the target language in continuous text rather than disconnected sentences, and gives learners more opportunity to see the expressions being used naturally.
Which idioms and phrasal verbs are included?

When people think of idioms, they tend to come up with imaginative and colourful examples: kick the bucket, have a bone to pick with someone, full of beans, be barking up the wrong tree, etc. These vivid expressions can be extremely difficult to understand, so they are often the ones that teachers are called on to explain in the classroom. It is also undeniably true that idioms — and especially the more vivid ones — hold a particular fascination for some learners. However, there are thousands of idioms, less exotic and often more transparent than the ones above, which are of a higher frequency and probably greater value in everyday English to the vast majority of learners.

These are typical examples:

it depends, in the end, have had enough of sth/sh, at the last minute, give my love to sb, first of all, it's no good (doing sth), by the way, get hold of sb, keep in touch, do your best, to a certain extent, get on sb's nerves, here you are, as usual, see how it goes, yes and no, I beg your pardon, make fun of sb, have second thoughts about doing sth, can't wait (to do sth), all over the place, make the most of sth, cover the cost (of sth), all of a sudden, cost a fortune.

In fact, some of these will appear so mundane that they often pass unnoticed as idioms. In some cases the meaning may be quite easy to guess, especially in context, but the same concept is often expressed in a different way in the learner's mother tongue, so these expressions need to be learnt, and are equally deserving of our attention.

At the intermediate / upper-intermediate level, we have concentrated on idioms and phrasal verbs which are likely to be of greatest value to learners in everyday English. To this end, you will find some vivid and colourful examples, but the majority are closer to the list above.

One final note on selection. Dictionaries do not always agree on what constitutes an idiom: hold the line is listed as an idiom in one dictionary, but a collocation in another. The same is true for cross your legs, be careful with money, have an early / a late night, etc. Our criterion for inclusion in this series is that an item has to be listed as an idiom in at least one of the following ELT dictionaries (and they are almost always in more than one):

Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners
Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary
Collins COBUILD Advanced Learner's English Dictionary

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New idioms and phrasal verbs are presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of the new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Important or additional information is included in the 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for five to ten minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
You will often notice the heading ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This indicates a personalized exercise which gives learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these in their notebooks, but they make ideal pair-work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner’s answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by native and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students study alone?

- Choose the topics that interest you. You don’t need to do the units in any particular order.
- Each page will probably take you about 20–25 minutes. Firstly, spend at least ten minutes studying the presentation, which may be a text, a dialogue, a table, etc. Use the glossaries to help you understand the meaning of new items. Practise saying the idioms and phrasal verbs a few times to help you remember them.
- Keep a notebook where you can write down the new idioms and phrasal verbs with the meaning and an example sentence to help you remember them. If you are using a bilingual dictionary, you could also add a translation.
- Do the exercises in pencil; then you can rub them out, and do them again in a few days’ time. Check your answers in the answer key on pages 145–65. At the end of many units you will find a section called ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This gives you an opportunity to use the vocabulary more freely to write in your notebook about yourself, your country, etc. You will find some possible answers in the answer key, written by native and proficient non-native speakers of English. You may find it interesting to compare your answers with theirs.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPP</td>
<td>opposite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>synonym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>informal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FML</td>
<td>formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sb</td>
<td>somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>You use ‘etc.’ at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren’t going to say them all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>that is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>for example</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can usually test yourself on the new vocabulary. Look at the idioms and phrasal verbs in the glossaries, and cover the meanings. See if you can remember the meanings. You can do this when you have finished the exercises, or several days later as a way of revising the idioms and phrasal verbs.

You can use the further practice exercises in the review sections which follow each module. Either do them immediately after a unit, or do them a few days later to help you revise the idioms and phrasal verbs.

If you haven’t got a good dictionary in English, we recommend The Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary. You may also be interested in two specialist dictionaries: Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English and Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary for learners of English.

Go to the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills to find a regular feature on the histories behind a number of idioms in this book.
1 What are idioms?

1 An idiom is a phrase with a meaning that is often difficult to understand by looking at the individual words. For example, it isn’t easy to guess the meaning of the idiom lose face, but seeing it in context will help you to understand it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He could lose face if other people see that he got everything wrong.</th>
<th>lose face be less respected or look stupid because of sth you have done.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Here are more examples:

| The teacher turned a blind eye to some of the children’s bad behaviour. | turn a blind eye (to sth) pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad. |
| My uncle just arrived out of the blue. | out of the blue INF suddenly and unexpectedly. |

2 Not all idioms are so difficult to guess. Many phrases that are easier to understand are still listed as idioms in dictionaries because they have a fixed form which you need to know and learn:

| We could see lights in the distance. | in the distance far away, but able to be seen or heard. |
| I ring my mother every day without fail. | without fail always. |
| If all else fails, I’ll have to sell the car. | if all else fails used to say what sb can do if nothing else they have done is successful. |

3 Most idioms have a fixed form. For example, if a name rings a bell, it means it is a name that sounds familiar to you. The idiom is ring a bell, but not ring the bell. However, with some idioms alternative words are possible:

| Do you want to go out? – That/It depends. | that/it depends used to say that you are not certain about something because other things have to be considered. |
| I would steer/stay clear of that place; it’s not very safe. | steer/stay clear of sth/sb take care to avoid sth or sb, because it or they may cause problems. |
| Why on earth are you shouting? Be quiet! How on earth did he pass the exam? He did no work at all. | why/how/where/who, etc. on earth INF used to emphasize a question when you are angry or surprised, or cannot think of an obvious answer. |

Sometimes additional words can be used within an idiom, especially to change the emphasis:

| She was in a terrible state, so I decided to stay and look after her. | be in / get into a state INF be/become anxious or upset. (Terrible here means ‘extreme’, so ‘she was extremely anxious!’) |
| It makes a lot of sense to buy now while houses are cheap. | make sense be a practical and logical thing to do. (A lot of here adds emphasis.) |

4 Idioms are very common in spoken English, and dictionaries show when they are particularly informal. In this book, informal idioms are labelled ‘INF’, like this: be in / get into a state INF. Here are more examples:

| How come you’re here so early? | how come INF used to ask the reason for something which is surprising. (Notice the word order after how come is in statement form, although it is a question.) |
| I had to run like mad to catch the bus. | like mad INF very fast, hard, much, etc. SYN flat out INF. |

5 To sum up, idioms:

- are phrases which are often difficult to understand out of context;
- usually have a fixed form;
- are very common in spoken English, and many are informal.
1 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.
   1. We should steer | stay clear of those people; they’re dangerous.
   2. Who in | on earth is that?
   3. We will lose face | lose our face if we just accept their lowest offer.
   4. Does it matter if we’re late? ~ It | That depends.
   5. I could hear the drums in distance | in the distance.
   6. Have you heard of a place called Dinster? ~ Er, it rings a bell | noise.

2 The words or phrases in the box are missing from the sentences below. Where do they go?
   Write them at the end.

   on earth       out of the blue ✓       if all else fails       a lot of       like mad       terrible       without fail

   Our cousin arrived just after we got home last night. **out of the blue**
   1. He was in a state last night when he heard about the accident.
   2. How is your sister going to buy a car if she hasn’t got any money?
   3. It makes sense to give up sweet things if you are overweight.
   4. My brother loves that car, and he cleans it every day.
   5. The police came after us, so we ran.
   6. He’s in a bad situation, but he can always work for his father.

3 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

   Her name sounds familiar. **rings a bell**
   1. I’m going to stay clear of that part of town in future.
   2. We had to work like mad to finish the project.
   3. Do you think he’ll stay? ~ It depends.
   4. They arrived suddenly and unexpectedly.
   5. I could see the church far away.
   6. He felt he would look stupid if he refused to go in the icy water.

4 Complete the last word in each sentence or dialogue. Then underline the full idiom.

   I got this cheque for $300 out of the **blue**.
   1. Promise me you’ll post this letter without
   2. Do you know Alan Davies? ~ The name rings a
   3. He always buys the cheapest trainers. ~ Really? I don’t think that makes a lot of
   4. The boys shouldn’t be in there, but I’m just going to turn a blind
   5. After her dog died, she was in a terrible
   6. I can’t get out; the door is locked. ~ How

5 In this short text Leona is talking about last night. The idioms are shown in bold.
   Try to guess what they mean, then check in a dictionary.

   I was in **two minds about** going to Paul’s last night — it’s a long way to his place.
   But in the end I decided to go, and it’s a **good thing** that I did because Mike and
   Jean couldn’t go, so there were only three of us. A friend of Paul’s called Malcolm
   was there — he was a **good laugh**, and apparently, he’s **rolling in money**.

   1. be in two minds (about doing sth) =
   2. in the end =
   3. be a good thing (that) =
   4. a good laugh INF =
   5. be rolling in money INF =
2 Types of idiom

There are many different types of idiom. The following extract from a story includes some typical patterns. Read it, then look at the table below.

We left camp bright and early to take advantage of the good weather, but by the afternoon we were getting tired, so I asked Simon which was the quickest way back.

'Don’t ask me,' he said.

'It’s all right,' said Magnus. 'I know the way back from here. It’s a piece of cake.'

Famous last words! We followed him in one direction for half an hour, before he changed his mind and set off in another direction. But by five o’clock, Simon and I were fed up with walking round in circles. Even Magnus agreed we were getting nowhere and announced that we were lost.

Well, in that case, we should give Tim a ring,' I said. Tim Collier was in charge of our group and I knew he’d be furious that we’d got lost. But we were deep in a valley and there was no signal on my mobile, so we couldn’t get through. Just then, Simon realized where we were. Thank heavens for that, I thought. We followed him up a steep path, and at the top we could see we were only a stone’s throw from the main road, which more or less took us back to camp. We finally got there just before seven.

As we passed Tim, I tried to laugh it off. 'Ah, well, better late than never, eh?'

'You were supposed to be back by five,' he said. And with that, he marched off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of idiom</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 verb-based idioms</td>
<td>take advantage of sth</td>
<td>make good use of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>change your mind</td>
<td>change your decision or opinion about sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get nowhere</td>
<td>make no progress, or have no success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be supposed to do sth</td>
<td>If you are supposed to do sth, you should do it because sb told you to do it, or because it is your responsibility to do it. SYN be meant to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 prepositional phrases</td>
<td>in that case</td>
<td>used to say what will happen, or what you will do, as a result of a particular situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in charge (of sb/sth)</td>
<td>having control or command (of sb/sth).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 noun phrases</td>
<td>a piece of cake</td>
<td>INF a thing that is very easy to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a stone’s throw</td>
<td>a short distance. (See page 144.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 sayings/proverbs</td>
<td>famous last words</td>
<td>used when you think sb is speaking with too much confidence about sth that they think will happen. = it is better to arrive late than not at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>better late than never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 fixed phrases with two key words, usually joined by and or or</td>
<td>bright and early</td>
<td>early in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>more or less</td>
<td>almost or approximately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 idiomatic phrasal verbs</td>
<td>get through (to sb)</td>
<td>make contact with sb by phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laugh sth off</td>
<td>joke about sth to show you think it is not serious or important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 exclamations or short spoken phrases</td>
<td>don’t ask me</td>
<td>INF used to say that you don’t know the answer to sth. SYN search me INF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thank heavens</td>
<td>used to say you are pleased and relieved about sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Circle the correct answer.
1 I'm here. ~ Well, better late than ever | never, I suppose.
2 We got up quick | bright and early because we had to catch the seven o'clock train.
3 It looked a bad injury, but Matt just laughed it off | away, saying it didn't hurt.
4 The teacher who is in charge | responsibility of the boys must stay with them at all times.
5 Don't worry. Everything's under control. ~ Yeah, famous last phrase | words.
6 You should take care | advantage of being in Canada to practise your English.

2 Complete the idioms in this conversation. They are all from page 10.
A OK, I'm going now.
B Fine. By the way, did you get (1) __________ to your mother?
A Yes. She's fine, but she asked me to get some things from the chemist for her.
B Oh well, there's one in the shops near the park.
A Great. In that (2) __________ I can walk.
B Oh yes, it's just a stone's (3) __________ from here.
A Would you like to come into town afterwards?
B No, I'd better not. I'm (4) __________ to be at my sister's at four, and it's more or (5) __________ half past two now.
A OK, but if you change your (6) __________, just text me.

3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms that have a similar meaning.
- Who is responsible for the sales department? in charge of
- What's wrong? ~ I'm not making any progress with this essay.
- How was your exam? ~ Easy.
- When's Ben arriving? ~ I've no idea. He never tells me anything.
- The kids got back safely. ~ Oh, I'm so relieved to hear that.
- Did you try phoning? ~ Yes, but I couldn't contact him.
- Is the bank far? ~ No, it's only a short distance from here.

4 Identify the types of idioms in bold in these sentences and write the correct number in the spaces provided. Then look up the meanings in the answer key on page 145.
- There were lots of keys, but we found the right one by trial and error. Type 5
1 You can't live on £50 a week.
2 She's just lost $1000. ~ Good grief!
3 The food here is quite good in the main.
4 It was a completely new job, so it took me a while to find my feet.
5 They say absence makes the heart grow fonder. I'm not sure I believe it, though.
6 I'm afraid that wars happen – it's a fact of life.

5 It can be difficult to identify an idiom, and know where it begins and ends. Underline the idioms in the dialogue below. (You will check the meanings in the next exercise.)
Pam I can't stand sitting next to Nigel – he's always making fun of me. Would you swap places with me?
Livvy No way! He gets on my nerves too – all those stupid jokes. Oh, no, he's here!
Nigel Hi, girls. Do you want to hear a joke?
Pam No. Get lost, Nigel! You're a pain in the neck! Just go away!

6 Complete the table with the idioms you underlined. Then look up the meanings on page 145.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken phrase</th>
<th>Verb-based idiom</th>
<th>Noun phrase</th>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>can't stand</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Finding idioms in a dictionary

Where are idioms explained?

Dictionaries don't always enter idioms in the same place, or in the same way. Read the introduction to your dictionary to discover where to find idioms. In the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, idioms are explained after the symbol IDM. For example, the idiom in vain is in the IDM section after the main meanings of the word vain.

If there is more than one idiom, they are listed in alphabetical order (not including grammatical words such as a, the, sb/sth, his, her, etc.). So, with idioms listed at the word way, you will find all the way before by the way (a before b).

Which word in an idiom do I look up?

There isn't one simple rule, but in the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary most idioms are explained at the first meaningful word in the idiom (noun, verb, adjective, or adverb). For example, with these idioms, you need to look up the underlined word:

on purpose N pull sb's leg V it's a long story ADJ once in a blue moon ADV

With most idioms, there is also cross-referencing. For example, if you look up blue to find the meaning of once in a blue moon, there will be a reference telling you to look up once. (See also page 144.)

However, some common verbs, e.g. have and go, and some common adjectives, e.g. good, have so many idioms that they cannot be listed in one place. In this case, the dictionary tells you to look up the next noun, verb, adjective, etc. in the idiom. For example, if you look up have to find the meaning of the idiom have sth in common (with sb), you will see this:

Most idioms containing have are at the entries for the nouns and adjectives in the idioms, for example have your eye on sb is at eye n. have done with sth (especially)

To find the meaning of have sth in common, you need to look up common:

have sth in common (with sb) >> [of people] to have the same interests, ideas, etc. as sb else: Tim and I have nothing in common./I have nothing in common with Tim.

[Extracts from Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 8th edition.]

What information can I find?

- Dictionaries explain the meaning of an idiom and sometimes give an example.
- Most idioms can be used in spoken English and informal written English, but a dictionary will tell you if an idiom is especially informal, formal, humorous, old-fashioned, and so on. It will tell you if an idiom is more common in British English (BrE) or North American English (NAME).
- Dictionaries will show you if one word in an idiom can be replaced by another with the same meaning, e.g. it/that depends.
These exercises are based on the way idioms are listed in the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. Other dictionaries may not enter idioms in the same way, or at the same place.

1 Which word should you look up to find the meaning of these idioms?
(Think carefully before you answer 6 and 7.)
   if you ask me (Look up ask.)
   (at) any moment
   catch sb's eye
   out of breath
   it's early days
   not just yet
   go public
   be a good thing (that)

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? They contain idioms from page 12 and Exercise 1, so you may have to use a dictionary.
   1 If you do something on purpose, it is your intention to do it.
   2 If you catch somebody's eye, you do something stupid and somebody else notices.
   3 If something is going to happen at any moment, it is going to happen very soon.
   4 If you pull somebody's leg, you play a joke on them, usually by telling them something that isn't true.
   5 If somebody is out of breath, they are dead.
   6 If you do something once in a blue moon, you do it once a month.
   7 If you go public, you tell people about something that is a secret.
   8 If you do something in vain, you do it successfully.
   9 If you say 'by the way', you are going to say something that is not directly connected to what you have just been talking about.
   10 If you say 'it's a long story' to someone, you want them to sit down so that you can explain the story with all the details.

3 The idioms in bold have one word that can be replaced by another without changing the meaning. Look them up in your dictionary and write the idiom again using the alternative word.
   Are you going? ~ It depends. That depends.
   We've got a fantastic Italian restaurant on the doorstep.
   He arrived at the last minute, as usual.
   She was a bag of nerves before her exam. (Look up nerve.)
   Please send my love to Grace. (Look up love.)
   He's very angry, so just keep out of his way. (Look up way.)
   The company is always looking for new blood. (Look up blood.)

4 Does your dictionary label the style of the idioms in these sentences? What label does it use?
   Could I borrow the car? ~ No chance. informal
   As regards a solution to the problem, we're a long way off.
   She's a very attractive woman. ~ I'll say.
   We'll see you soon. Lots of love, Terry.
   I think these DVDs might have fallen off the back of a lorry.
   Put your coat on or you'll catch your death of cold!
   I've never had an accident on my motorbike - touch wood!
   I'm sorry, we're fresh out of coffee.
   I'm ringing with reference to your advertisement in today's newspaper.
4 The grammar of phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb, e.g. put, take, show, and one or two particles, e.g. off, out, by, up, etc. These are the three main types of phrasal verbs.

1 Phrasal verbs with no object ('intransitive')

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>check in</td>
<td>I have to check in before 8.00. go to a desk in an airport or hotel and tell an official that you have arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up</td>
<td>Business was bad, but now things are looking up. INF (of a business, sb's situation, etc.) get better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show up</td>
<td>She didn't show up till the next morning. INF arrive in a place where sb is waiting for you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Phrasal verbs which can be separated by an object ('transitive, separable')

She wrote his name down in her notebook. (Write sth down = write sth on paper.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look sth up</td>
<td>I had to look the word up. look for information in a book or online.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sth up</td>
<td>I didn't want to see him, so I made up an excuse and left. invent a story or an explanation for sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try sth on</td>
<td>I tried the jacket on but it was too small. put on a piece of clothing to see if it fits or looks good on you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With these transitive verbs, you can usually put the object before or after the particle.
She wrote his name down. OR She wrote down his name.

If the object is a long phrase, it will usually come after the phrasal verb.
She wrote down everything she could remember about him.

If the object is a pronoun, e.g. him, her, it must go between the verb and the particle.
She wrote it down. NOT She wrote down it.

3 Phrasal verbs which cannot be separated by an object ('transitive, inseparable')

These may have one or two particles.

He looked after the baby. NOT He looked the baby after.
(Look after sb/sth = take care of or be responsible for sb/sth.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look into sth</td>
<td>I complained to the airline, and they're looking into it. investigate and try to discover the facts about sth, e.g. a crime, a problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come across sth/sth</td>
<td>I came across the word in an article. meet sb or find sth by chance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand for sth</td>
<td>What does WWW stand for? represent or mean (WWW stands for World Wide Web).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out with sb</td>
<td>Marisa's going out with Tom's brother. spend time with sb and have a romantic relationship with them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut back on sth</td>
<td>I must cut back on sweets to try and lose weight. reduce the amount of sth that you eat, spend, use, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**spotlight Intransitive and transitive verbs**

Some verbs can be both intransitive and transitive, but a difference in structure indicates a difference in meaning: e.g. **look up** = get better, but **look sth up** = look for information in a book or online; **take off** = (of a plane) leave the ground, but **take sth off** = remove a piece of clothing.

**spotlight Phrasal verbs in dictionaries**

Dictionaries usually list phrasal verbs after the entry for the main verb and any idioms. They show you if a verb takes an object (sb/sth). If the phrasal verb is separable, you will find **sb/sth** between the verb and the particle, e.g. **make sth up**. If the verb and particle are inseparable, you will see **sb/sth** after the particle, e.g. **look after sb/sth**.

1. **Tick ✓ the sentences which are correct.**
   1. He wrote a few words down.       5. I've cut back on smoking.
   2. He wrote down.                   6. I'm trying to cut back on.
   3. Did he write down her address?   7. She's cut chocolate back on.
   4. Don't write it down yet.         8. There are easy ways to cut back on it.

2. **It is missing in some of these sentences. Where does it go?**
   - If you don't know the meaning, look up in the dictionary.
   1. Someone has stolen our car, and the police are looking into at the moment.
   2. It wasn't a true story; I'm sure he just made up.
   3. They said they'd be here early, but they didn't show up till 9.00.
   4. Can I ask you about your cat? Who looks after when you go on holiday?
   5. I don't know what MP3 stands for. Do you?
   6. I hadn't seen the website before; I came across yesterday on the Internet.
   7. If you try on and it's too big, you could always give it to me.
   8. The train was delayed but it finally came in at midday.

3. **Organize the words into sentences and add one word.**
   - cut | to | should | sugar | you | try | back You should try to cut back on sugar.
   1. 5:00 | can | you | check | at |
   2. look | you | could | the | number?
   3. today | daughter | after | friend's | I'm | my
   4. David's | out | he's | going | sister
   5. Cable | CNN | Network | stands | News
   6. this | like | try | would | to | you | skirt?

4. **Rewrite the sentences using a phrasal verb from page 14. The meaning must stay the same.**
   - I found the information by chance on the Internet. I came across the information on the Internet.
   1. She wasn't happy, but now things are getting better.
   2. The committee investigated the cause of the problem.
   3. I didn't know the answer, so I invented something.
   4. The train's arriving on platform five.
   5. We can reduce the electricity we use.
   6. What do the letters FAQ represent?
   7. I had to check the meaning in a dictionary.
   8. Our meeting was at 5:00, but Sue never arrived.

5. **ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY** Use your dictionary to find out if these verbs are transitive or intransitive, and separable or inseparable. In your notebook, write a sentence example for one meaning of the verb.
   - put back put sth back (transitive, separable) e.g. I put the book back on the shelf.
   - rub out, go in for, settle down, take after, take back, fall out with
5 Core meanings 1

A On

Some particles can express a particular meaning when they are used with certain verbs. For example, on can indicate continuation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The meeting dragged on for hours.</td>
<td>drag on continue for too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I carried on painting while the light was still good.</td>
<td>carry on (doing sth) continue with an activity for a period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael's very annoying – he keeps on taking my pens.</td>
<td>keep on doing sth repeat sth many times, often in an annoying way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be quiet and get on with your work.</td>
<td>get on with sth continue doing sth, often after an interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The weather was great, so we stayed on for a couple more days.</td>
<td>stay on continue enjoying yourself, studying, or working in a place, often after others have left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We drove on for several kilometres.</td>
<td>drive on continue driving.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight go on (see also page 65)

The traffic noise goes on all night. = continues without changing.
He went on (and on) about his car. = talked about his car for a long time in a boring way.
Let's go on to Exercise 2. = pass from doing the first exercise to doing the next exercise. SYN move on to sth.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 Pat went home but I stayed on...
2 I was angry because I kept on...
3 We had a coffee, then got on with...
4 The company can't go on...
5 The lecture dragged on...
6 The teacher told us to move on...
7 He's always going on about...
8 We weren't tired, so we carried on...

a his collection of DVDs. No one's interested.
b some more work.
c like this; we're losing too much money.
d to the next section of the text.
e until the party finished.
f making the same mistake.
g for a few more miles.
h for ages; everyone was bored.

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb from the box in the correct form.

-We played cards in the garden and just continued until it got dark. carried on.
1 He is always interrupting me; it's very annoying.
2 We've talked enough about this. Let's move on to the next item on the list.
3 Some students leave at sixteen, while others continue for two more years.
4 I thought it would be a short speech, but it continued for almost an hour.
5 The train service is getting worse and worse; we can't continue like this.
6 She talked for hours about her boyfriend – I nearly fell asleep.
7 When the children have gone to school, I can do the housework.
8 The petrol station was closed, so we continued to the next one.
B Off and around

Off sometimes adds a meaning of departure or separation. Around can add the meaning, ‘with no particular purpose or aim.’ About and around are interchangeable in the examples below.

‘My sister was going skiing and I went to the airport to see her off. But when we got there it was snowing heavily, and the plane couldn’t take off, so we had to come home. By the morning the snow was very deep, and we were cut off from the rest of the village.’

I went off to do some shopping, and left my husband messing about with his motorbike while the boys lazed around in the garden. When I got back, there were tools lying around everywhere, and Mike and the boys had disappeared.

‘There were some boys hanging around the school entrance, and one or two were messing about with other pupils’ bikes, so I told them to clear off.’

Glossary

see sb off
   go to an airport, station, etc. with sb in order to say goodbye to them.

take off
   (of a plane) leave the ground.

cut sth off
   (often passive) separate sth from sth else, so it is difficult to leave or enter. (Cut sth off sth remove sth from sth larger by cutting it.)

go off
   leave a place, especially in order to do sth.

mess about/around
   INF 1 spend time doing sth or repairing sth in a relaxed way (Text 2). 2 do sth or use sth in a careless or annoying way (Text 3).

(with sth)
   relax, enjoy yourself, and do nothing.

laze around/about
   (of a number of things) be left in a place, usually untidily or where they shouldn’t be.

lie around/about
   INF spend time in a place doing nothing.

hang around/about
   INF go away (often used angrily as a command).

clear off
   

3 Write six more sentences using words from the table.

| He leaves his shoes lying | at the airport. |
| I saw my dad | the street corner. |
| We lazed | until 7.00. |
| The town was cut | and leave her alone. |
| We didn’t take | by the flood water. |
| She told me to clear | by the pool. |
| The boys often hang | on the floor. |

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form.

1 After the concert, there were lots of people around, waiting for taxis.
2 My husband spends most of the weekend about on the river with his boat.
3 We a branch off the tree because it was getting too big.
4 My son always leaves his CDs around in the living room.
5 He off to buy a paper, but he’ll be back in a minute.
6 My brother’s leaving for Singapore tomorrow, so we’re all going to him off.
7 A lot of teenagers just around the centre of town: they have nothing better to do.
8 I don’t like that boy following me. I wish he’d off.
A Up and through

When up is used with certain verbs, it doesn't change the meaning of the verb, but emphasizes the idea of completing or finishing something. The verbs in the text are separable.

Karen made her son eat up his breakfast and drink up his milk before he went to school. Then, as soon as he'd left, she cleared the breakfast things up and put the dirty stuff in the dishwasher. Today, she was also going to wash the floor, but then she remembered she'd used up the floor cleaner the previous day, so she tidied up the living room instead.

Through sometimes suggests going from the beginning to the end of something. The verbs below are inseparable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'd like to go through the homework.</td>
<td>look at, check, or discuss sth carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His father has lived through two wars.</td>
<td>experience and survive sth very difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I flicked through his new book.</td>
<td>look through sth quickly, without reading it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I looked through your report yesterday.</td>
<td>look at the pages of sth, reading it only in part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I managed to sleep through the storm.</td>
<td>continue sleeping while there is a lot of noise around you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
1 I picked up the book and flicked through a all the milk from the fridge.
2 My grandfather lived through b the first few pages.
3 We sat down and went through c the noise of my neighbour's party.
4 I managed to sleep through d the sugar that was on the floor.
5 I had to clear up e years of depression.
6 Please don't use up f all the rice; she gave me too much.
7 I couldn't eat up g her desk.
8 I offered to tidy up h the report together.

2 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs.
1 After the party we had to up all the mess that people had left.
2 I through the brochure while I was waiting, but I only read part of it.
3 I'd up all my travel tickets, so I had to buy some more.
4 The teacher usually through the exercises when we've finished them.
5 My mother makes me my room up every week.
6 Many of these people have had to through years of civil war.
7 OK. up your coffee and we can go.
8 The music was really loud, but Jake through it without waking up.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
1 Do you normally go through homework in class?
2 When did you last tidy up your bedroom?
3 Do you ever sleep through the alarm clock?
4 Do you always clear up as soon as you've finished a meal?
5 Do you often flick through magazines without buying them?
B Back

In phrasal verbs, the particle back usually has the meaning of returning somewhere, or returning something to a place.

The radio was faulty so I took it back to the shop. She took his car key by mistake, but gave it back this morning. She read a few pages then put the book back on the shelf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you borrow that brush, please bring it back.</td>
<td>return to this place with sth that you have taken or borrowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll go there by bus, and Jim can bring me back.</td>
<td>return sb to a place, usually by car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The books were damaged so I sent them back.</td>
<td>return sth by post, messenger, waiter, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He rang at 2.00. I said I'd phone him back later.</td>
<td>return sb's phone call. SYN ring sb back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dad lent me the money, but I've paid him back.</td>
<td>return to sb the money that you borrowed from them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight get back**

When do you get back? = return, especially to your home or workplace.
Can we get the money back? = have something returned to you.
I woke up and couldn't get back to sleep. = return to an earlier state, situation, etc.

4 Tick ✓ the most likely answers. One, two, or three may be possible.

1. The jumper wasn't right, so I ______ it back to the shop.
   - took
   - rang
   - sent
   - got

2. I was out when he called me this morning, so I'll have to ______ him back.
   - ring
   - get
   - bring
   - phone

3. When you've finished with the books, please ______ them back.
   - take
   - pay
   - bring
   - put

4. If your train arrives more than an hour late, you ______ half your money back.
   - take
   - ring
   - get
   - pay

5. I borrowed the books yesterday and ______ them back to Pat this morning.
   - gave
   - put
   - took
   - rang

6. The shirts weren't the ones I ordered, so I ______ them back.
   - gave
   - sent
   - took
   - put

5 Complete the dialogues with the correct verb.

1. Did you complain about the steak? ~ Yes, the waiter ______ it back to the kitchen.
2. Did Angela phone? ~ Yes, but I was out, so I'll ______ her back later.
3. Did you have to borrow the money? ~ Yes, but I can ______ it back easily.
4. Do you pay a deposit when you move in? ~ Yes, but you ______ it back when you leave.
5. Did you go there by train? ~ Yes, but my uncle ______ me back in his car.
6. The injury affected him a lot. ~ Yes, he never ______ back to the same level of fitness.
7. I'm leaving soon. ~ OK, fine. What time do you ______ back?
8. Do you want to borrow this book? ~ Yes, please. I'll ______ it back to you tomorrow.
7 Different meanings of phrasal verbs

Many phrasal verbs can have more than one meaning.

Go off

The alarm goes off at 5.00. = rings. The lights suddenly went off. = stopped working. The bomb went off. = exploded.

Put sth on

I put my best suit on. = dressed myself. OPP take sth off. He put the light on. SYNS turn sth on, switch sth on. I put on a lot of weight last year. = became fatter.

Break down

The car broke down. = stopped working. She broke down at the news. = started crying.

Go down

The sun's going down. = disappearing below the horizon. OPP come up. Prices went down by 10 per cent. = became lower. OPP go up. I can't do this zip up. = fasten.

Do sth up

They're doing the flat up. = redecorating.

Turn up

When did they turn up? = arrive. Look! My ring's turned up! = be found by chance.

Tie sb up

They tied him up. = tied his arms so that he couldn't move. She's tied up at the moment. = very busy (used in the passive).
1 Tick (✓) the answers which are possible. One, two, or all three may be correct.
1 He's put on about five kilos □ a lot of weight □ fat □.
2 Did you hear the fire alarm □ television □ car alarm □ go off?
3 I'm hoping that the temperature □ price of meat □ age limit □ will go down.
4 She's very young and she can't do her shoes □ jacket □ socks □ up yet.
5 The taxi □ car □ train □ broke down on the way back from the mountains.

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
1 We sat and watched the sun come down over the horizon.
2 Could you put the lights down? I can't see a thing in here.
3 I don't know what's happened to my keys; I hope they turn out.
4 We've decided to make the living room up; Pat's going to do the painting.
5 She was tidied up this week, so I made an appointment to see her next Monday.
6 When I heard what had happened to the animals, I broke away and cried.
7 They tied me out and ran off with the money.
8 The zip on my coat has broken and I can't do it on.

3 Complete the email.

Hi Laura, What a morning! My alarm clock (1) ______________________ off unexpectedly at 4.00 a.m., and I couldn't get back to sleep. I just lay there worrying till the sun (2) ______________________ up, and then I got up, feeling terrible. I had an important business meeting in town, so I (3) ______________________ my best suit on, then I spilt coffee all over the trousers and had to change. I decided to drive, but that was a big mistake – the car (4) ______________________ down on the way to the meeting. I rang the man I was meeting and tried to explain, but he said that if I didn't (5) ______________________ up in the next five minutes, he would have to leave, and he added that he would be (6) ______________________ up for the rest of the week. I sat in the car and just (7) ______________________ down in tears. And it was still only 9.30!

4 Replace the underlined words with a suitable phrasal verb in the correct form.
1 What time did they arrive in the end?
2 My hands were so cold I couldn't fasten the buttons on my coat.
3 I'm worried about my gas bill; I've heard the prices are increasing again.
4 Excuse me, Mr Salter, but are you busy at the moment?
5 We're planning to redecorate the flat before we move in.
6 There was a terrible bang, and we realized that a bomb had exploded.
7 Has the missing dog been found yet?
8 He just started crying for no reason I could understand.

5 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 6.)
1 Do car alarms (1) ______________________ off very often where you live?
2 Do you tend to (2) ______________________ weight on at certain times of the year? If so, when?
3 Have you ever been in a car that (3) ______________________ down late at night? If so, what happened?
4 Is your home newly decorated, or would you like to (4) ______________________ it up?
5 What happens if you (5) ______________________ up late for class?
6 Are prices generally (6) ______________________ down, up, or staying the same at the moment?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Review: Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1 Complete the definitions.
   1 If someone arrives out of the blue, it means they arrive and unexpectedly.
   2 If you’re driving like mad, it means you’re driving
   3 If you ring your mother every morning without fail, it means you ring your mother in the morning.
   4 If someone thinks they have lost face, it means they feel that they look because of something they have done.
   5 If someone is in a terrible state, it means they are feeling very
   6 If you turn a blind eye to something, it means you pretend not to it.

2 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.
   1 A How you’re still doing that grammar exercise?
      B Because when I checked my answers I realized they didn’t sense.
   2 A Ooh, that awful David Leventon – just steer of him!
      B David Leventon? That name rings a – didn’t he go to prison for burglary?
   3 A What’s happening over there in distance?
      B It looks like a man chasing some boys and they’re running flat.
   4 A How earth did the accident happen?
      B She was running mad for the bus and didn’t see the cyclist.

Unit 2

1 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GET</th>
<th>HEAVENS</th>
<th>DON'T</th>
<th>FAMOUS</th>
<th>LAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOWHERE</td>
<td>THANK</td>
<td>ASK</td>
<td>ME</td>
<td>WORDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OF</td>
<td>CAKE</td>
<td>EARLY</td>
<td>BETTER</td>
<td>NEVER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIECE</td>
<td>BRIGHT</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>LATE</td>
<td>THAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>LESS</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>CHANGE</td>
<td>YOUR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MORE</td>
<td>OR</td>
<td>STONE'S</td>
<td>THROW</td>
<td>MIND</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> Very early in the morning. bright and early
1 You say this when you don’t know the answer to something.
2 Almost or approximately.
3 You might say this when someone has arrived late.
4 Only a short distance away.
5 Used to say you are pleased and relieved about something.
6 An informal phrase meaning ‘very easy’.
7 You say this when you think someone is too confident that something is going to happen.
8 Change your decision or opinion about something.
9 Make no progress, or have no success.
2 Complete the words in the sentences. Then underline the full idiom in each one.
1. If something is generally true, you can also say it's true in the m_________.
2. Do you agree with the saying that absence makes the heart grow f__________?
3. ‘Good g__________!’ is quite a common exclamation to express surprise.
4. If somebody gets on your n__________, you find them very irritating.
5. Many people think that trial and e__________ is a good way of learning.
6. We all have to face disappointments; that’s a fact of l__________.

Unit 3
1. Replace the underlined words with an idiom that includes the word in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.
   It was lucky that he left early. THING a good thing
   1. Mo and I see each other very rarely. MOON
   2. She was just playing a joke on me. LEG
   3. I’ve got a market very close to my flat. DOORSTEP
   4. We need some new members in the club. FRESH
   5. She’s planning to tell everyone the secret. PUBLIC
   6. I am writing about the advertisement. REFERENCE

2. Cross out one unnecessary word in each line.
   1. He said the watch had fallen off the back part of a lorry. I was right not to trust him.
   2. She’s made good progress at work, but it’s still too early days. We’ll see what happens.
   3. A beautiful blue silk shirt caught up my eye in the shop window.
   4. I think she just said it on her purpose to annoy me. And she succeeded.
   5. I’d better go or I’ll be late. Oh, and by in the way, what time’s the meeting tomorrow?
   6. Why were you in your pyjamas in the street at 1.00? ~ Well, it’s a long time story.

Unit 4
1. Read the sentences on the left. Circle the phrase on the right which expresses the meaning most accurately.
   1. We need to cut back on coffee. drink less coffee | stop drinking coffee
   2. I’m looking after the children. looking for them | taking care of them
   3. She tried it on. put on a piece of clothing | made an effort
   4. He takes after his father. looks after him | behaves like him
   5. The girls have fallen out. they’ve had a row | they’ve had an accident
   6. What does it stand for? represent | show

2. Complete the dialogues with a suitable phrasal verb.
   1. There’s a mistake here. ~ That’s OK, it’s in pencil. I’ll it.
   2. Did you find the book by chance? ~ Yes, I it in a second-hand bookshop.
   3. Is business getting better? ~ Yes. Things have started to recently.
   4. Were the two girls late? ~ Yes. They didn’t until 9.30.
   5. What time should we be at the airport? ~ We’re meant to before take-off.
   6. He didn’t invent the story, did he? ~ Yes, he just it.
   7. Is that her boyfriend? ~ Yes. They’ve been each other for months.
   8. I don’t know what this word means. ~ Well, it , then.
Unit 5

1 Put the words in the correct order and add one more word.

1 the | at | uncle | I | my | off | station | saw | my uncle | off | at | the | station.
2 on | illness | about | and | she | went | her
3 in | was | Brenda | garden | messing | the
4 the | was | deep | by | cut | village | snow
5 lunchtime | working | children | the | carried | until
6 club | outside | boys | the | hanging | the | were
7 a | of | lying | there | lot | was | money

2 Complete the dialogues using a phrasal verb.

1 A Did you have a relaxing time?
   B Yes, I just ___________________ in the garden. It was lovely.
2 A Did she interrupt your work?
   B Yes, and I really needed to ___________________ with my project.
3 A Why are you going to the airport?
   B I’m going to ___________________ my brother.
4 A He’s very boring, isn’t he?
   B Yes, he’s always ___________________ about his job.
5 A Is Ella very untidy?
   B Definitely! She leaves all her clothes ___________________.
6 A Jenny’s very annoying.
   B Yes, she ___________________ losing things – it drives me mad.
7 A Was it a good play?
   B Well, the acting was OK, but it just ___________________ for hours.
8 A Did you leave the party late?
   B Yes, I ___________________ after it finished to help clear up.

Unit 6

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 When you go to John’s, would you bring | put my coat back home, please? I left it there.
   2 Come on, eat up | out that salad; it’s good for you.
   3 The room was a terrible mess and it took me ages to clear | tidy it up.
   4 I paid him too much, but I’m sure I’ll pay | get it back if I ask for it.
   5 Did you live | go through the list and discuss everything?
   6 She took a book from the shelf and looked | flicked through it.
2 Rewrite the sentences using a phrasal verb. Use the words in capital letters.
   ▶ If you borrow the key, please return it. BACK If you borrow the key, please put it back.
1. Please put everything in order in the office. UP
2. I'll have to return these trousers to the shop. BACK
3. When do you think he'll return from lunch? BACK
4. I looked quickly at the magazine. THROUGH
5. Maggie rang – she wants you to return her call. BACK
6. Did you check the figures? THROUGH

Unit 7

1 Complete the phrasal verbs.
   1. When the sun goes down, it's getting near the end of the day.
   2. If someone gets up at 7.00, it means they arrive at 7.00.
   3. If you put on weight, it means you get heavier.
   4. If you're up at work, it means you're busy.
   5. If someone's getting their living room up, it means they're decorating it.
   6. If your car breaks down on the way home, it means you can't get home.
   7. If an alarm goes off, it makes a loud noise.
   8. If you get your coat up, it means you fasten the buttons of your coat.
   9. If someone goes down, it means they start crying.
  10. If the lights suddenly go off, it means the room goes dark.
  11. If your salary goes down, it means you'll earn less money.
  12. If something goes up, it means you find it by chance.

2 Complete the crossword. Replace the words in italics in the clues with a phrasal verb.

   I was told to remove my shoes as soon as I went in the building.
   1. The bomb landed, but luckily it didn't explode.
   2. Do you think the prices will fall before the end of the year?
   3. They always tell you to fasten your seat belt when you get on the plane.
   5. Did you watch the sun rise this morning? It was beautiful.
   6. I got dressed in an old pair of boots and a raincoat and went for a walk.
   7. The photocopyer in our office stopped working, so I couldn't send him the documents.
   8. My flat has been redecorated in bright colours.
   9. Why did the lights suddenly stop working in the middle of the evening?
8 I can follow classroom language

A Teachers' instructions

Teachers often use certain idioms and phrasal verbs when they give instructions in class.

First of all, let's go over the homework.
You can leave out Exercise 2.
If you make a mistake, rub it out.
Take it in turns to read the dialogue.
Pascal, swap places with Marcel, please.
Finish it off at home and hand it in tomorrow.
Put all the books away before you leave.
OK, let's call it a day.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first of all</td>
<td>before doing anything else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go over/through sth</td>
<td>look at, check, or discuss sth carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave sth out</td>
<td>not do sth, e.g. an exercise (leave sb out = not include sb).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub sth out</td>
<td>remove marks made by a pencil, chalk, etc. using a rubber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take it in turns</td>
<td>do sth one after another so that everyone has an opportunity to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swap places (with sb)</td>
<td>take sb's seat or position so they can take yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish sth off</td>
<td>do the last part of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth away</td>
<td>put sth where you usually keep it, especially after using it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call it a day</td>
<td>INF decide to stop what you are doing (often work).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight hand sth in/out/round

If you hand sth in, you give something to a person in authority, e.g. a teacher or the police.
If you hand sth out, you give something to each person in a group, e.g. Hand out the books.
SYN give sth out.
If you hand sth round, you pass something, especially food or drink, to people in a group: Lars, could you hand the cakes round, please?

1 Complete the phrases below using words in the box.

it of it a day places over something all in turns something out

call swap take
go hand first

2 Complete the teacher's instructions.

Silvia, first of (1) , could you (2) out these worksheets, please?
Thanks. Now everyone, I want you to do the first exercise and we'll go (3) the answers when you've finished. If you use pencil, you can rub (4) the answers afterwards, and do it again later. Marco, I know you have to leave in a minute, so why don't you finish it (5) at home and hand it (6) to me tomorrow?

3 Complete the last word in each sentence.

1 If you want to talk to Joe, we'll have to swap
2 After you've used the CD player, remember to put it
3 Paul, you can't use the computer all the time; you'll have to take it in
4 I think we've done enough; let's call it a
5 If you can't do one of the questions, just leave it
6 As it was our last lesson, the teacher made cakes for the class and handed them
B Teachers’ advice

At different times, teachers have given me the following advice.

- If you’re doing an English course, take it seriously.
- Do written work in rough first, then it doesn’t matter if you cross something out.
- Practising with classmates will help you to build up your confidence.
- If you’re not sure of the meaning of a word, look it up rather than guess.
- It’s no good writing things in a notebook if you don’t go back and study them again.
- What you learn in class is just the tip of the iceberg. You need to study at home as well.

Glossary

- take sth seriously: think that sth is important and should be given careful attention.
- look sth up: look for information about sth in a reference book or online.
- in rough: you do it for the first time without worrying about mistakes because you will write it correctly later.
- cross sth out: it is crossed out. Look it something up.
- it’s no good (doing sth): it will have no positive result (doing sth). SYN it’s no use (doing sth).
- go back (to...): return to a person, place, subject, or activity.
- build sth up: increase or develop sth over a period of time (build up confidence / strength / a reputation, etc.).
- the tip of the iceberg: only a small part of a much larger problem or matter.
- at home: in your own house or flat.

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1. If you see a mistake, you can just cross it off.
2. I think it’s a real problem, and what you can see is just the top of the iceberg.
3. It’s no use to study grammar if you don’t practise it.
4. My brother’s in home at the moment.
5. It’s not good trying to learn English without a dictionary.
6. When you’ve finished the text, get back to the beginning and read it again.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. I always write essays in first, then I copy them out later.
2. They think they’ve solved the problem, but this is just the tip of the...
3. My name was on the list, but somebody it out – I don’t know why.
4. When I studied English at school, I didn’t really it seriously.
5. I wrote the answers quickly, then I went and checked them carefully later.
6. It’s no telling him to work harder. He just won’t listen to you.
7. He missed last term with a serious illness, and he’ll need time to up his strength.
8. Give me the dictionary and I’ll it up.

6 ABOUT YOU Do you do any of the things suggested at the top of the page? Is it all good advice or is there any bad advice, in your opinion? Write your answers, or talk to another student.
9 I can talk about learning

A How to make progress

Dos and don’ts

- Don’t be embarrassed about speaking: the main thing is to make yourself understood.
- Don’t be afraid to make mistakes: you learn from trial and error.
- The classroom is an opportunity to practise speaking, so make the most of it.
- There are certain things, such as irregular verbs, that you can learn by heart.

- Saying something out loud can help you to practise the pronunciation and remember it.
- Don’t miss lessons, or you’ll get behind with your work and find it difficult to catch up.
- Don’t give up. Stick at it and you’ll get there in the end.

Glossary

dos and don’ts

make yourself understood

trial and error

make the most of sth

learn sth (off) by heart (say/read sth) out loud

get behind (with sth)

catch up (with sb)

give up

stick at sth

get there

things you should and shouldn’t do.

speak in a way that others can understand.

a way of solving a problem by trying several possibilities and learning from your mistakes.

enjoy sth or use sth as much as you can.

learn sth by reading or hearing it repeatedly until you remember it exactly.

(say/read sth) so that others can hear it.

not do sth on time, and then have more to do later.

reach the level of others who are more advanced.

stop trying to do sth, or accept that you cannot do sth.

continue with sth even though it is difficult.

achieve sth after a period of work or effort.

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

▶ At school, we had to learn certain poems _______ heart. by
1 My pronunciation isn’t very good, but I manage to make understood.
2 It’ll take me a long time to become a doctor, but I’ll there eventually.
3 He was ill for ages, and unfortunately he got behind his studies.
4 It’s your only chance, so make the most it.
5 I missed several lessons, so now I have to up with the others in the class.
6 The teacher started the lesson with a long list of and don’ts.

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 Can you usually _______ yourself understood in English?
2 Have you tried to learn certain things by _______? If so, what?
3 Do you say words out _______ to help you to remember them?
4 Do you always _______ the most of your time in class?
5 Do you ever _______ behind with any of your studies?
6 Do you think trial and _______ is a good learning method?
7 If you start something, do you generally _______ at it?
8 Have you ever started a course and then _______ up?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student. Which is the best piece of advice in the Dos and don’ts above?
B A learning process

As I had planned a holiday in Spain, I decided to brush up on my Spanish before I went, and I enrolled on a local evening course. At first I had to rack my brains to remember anything, and I couldn’t make sense of the grammar, so it was very hard to keep up with the other students. Then, after a while, things started coming back to me, and I realized there were lots of words on the tip of my tongue. But some of the new vocabulary wouldn’t sink in – words just went in one ear and out the other. When you work hard all day, it’s not easy to keep your mind on a difficult subject in the evening. But I stuck at it, and I began to pick things up more quickly. All I have to do now is keep it up.

Glossary

brush up on sth / brush sth up

improve your knowledge or skill in sth, especially when you have not used it for a period of time. (See page 144.)

make sense of sth

manage to understand sth.

keep up (with sb)

make progress at the same speed as others.

sink in

(of information or experiences) be remembered or understood.

keep your mind on sth

continue to concentrate on sth.

pick sth up

learn sth without making a big effort.

keep it up

continue to do sth as well as you are doing it now.

spotlight Remembering and forgetting

If you rack your brains (or brain), you try hard to remember something.

If information comes back to you, you remember it.

If a word or name is on the tip of your tongue, you are sure you know it, but you can’t remember it at that moment.

If information goes in one ear and out the other, you forget it quickly.

4 Complete the six phrases using words in the box.

the tip in one ear your brains sense of something of my tongue

it up and out the other your mind on something

rack it up on keep make go keep

5 Complete the sentences.

1 I often find that I have words the tip of my

2 I often have to my brains to remember things I’ve learnt recently.

3 I think I’m doing really well in English, but I need to it up.

4 I’m bad at languages. New words go in one and out the

5 I’m good at languages. I can usually things up quite quickly.

6 I find it quite hard to sense of the Present Perfect in English.

7 If I don’t write down new words as I learn them, they don’t sink

8 I need to brush on irregular English verbs.

9 When I practise speaking, I find that lots of words back to me.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences in Exercise 5 again. Which ones are true for you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Thursday: my last chance to revise for my economics exam. I've worked hard to try and get on top of this subject. Not only have I got into the habit of reading the business pages in the newspapers, but I also spent the holidays going through all my lecture notes. I know it's important not to get too bogged down, so I decided not to study everything but just try and work out which questions might come up - and concentrate on those. I also went through some past papers with a friend, which was really useful. Now, I'm just keeping my fingers crossed for tomorrow - but the truth is, I can only do my best, and it's not the end of the world if I fail. Anyway, I'd better get down to some work.

Glossary

- **get on top of sth**: manage to control or deal with sth. SYN get to grips with sth.
- **get into the habit of doing sth**: develop a particular habit.
- **go through sth**: look at or study notes, papers, etc. SYN go over sth.
- **get bogged down (in sth)**: INF become so involved with the details of sth that you can't make any progress.
- **work sth out**: solve a problem by considering the facts.
- **come up**: If a question, number, name, etc. comes up, it is selected and appears somewhere (in this case, in an exam paper).
- **keep your fingers crossed**: hope for good luck or success.
- **it's not the end of the world**: INF = it's not the worst thing that could happen.
- **get down to sth**: begin to do sth and give serious attention to it.

**spotlight Idioms with best**

If you do your best or try your best or do something to the best of your ability, you try as hard as possible to achieve something.

To wish someone luck for an exam, you can say (The) best of luck!

1. Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.
   - It's not the last end of the world.
   - 1 I must get to the grips with this. 4 I did it up to the best of my ability.
   - 2 You can only do to your best. 5 Best of the luck!
   - 3 Keep both your fingers crossed! 6 He works it out answers to problems.

2. Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)
   - 1 Do you find it easy to ________ down to studying in the evening?
   - 2 Do you always do things to the best of your ________?
   - 3 Do you ever get ________ down in details when you're working?
   - 4 Do you go ________ your notes when revising for an exam?
   - 5 Do you ever try to guess which topics will ________ up in an exam?
   - 6 Is it a good idea to get into the ________ of studying regularly?
   - 7 What's the best way to get on ________ of a subject?
   - 8 Do you ever feel it'll be the end of the ________ if you fail an exam?

3. **ABOUT YOU** Answer the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
What happens on exam day?

- The night before an exam, I stay up late and revise.
- Outside the exam room, I steer clear of other students who are in a panic.
- I keep one eye on the clock during the exam so that I don't run out of time.
- I try to stick to the question.
- If I get stuck on a question, I miss it out and go on to an easier one.
- If my mind goes blank, I breathe in and out slowly to calm myself.
- I read through my answers at the end to check that they make sense.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay up</td>
<td>go to bed later than usual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steer/stay clear of sb/sth</td>
<td>take care to avoid sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep/have one eye on sth</td>
<td>look at or watch sth while doing sth else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run out of sth</td>
<td>use all of sth and have no more left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick to sth</td>
<td>talk or write about one particular thing only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get stuck (on sth)</td>
<td>not be able to continue with sth because it is too hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss sth out</td>
<td>not include sth, or fail to include sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go blank</td>
<td>If your mind goes blank you are unable to remember the answer to a question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe in</td>
<td>take air into your lungs. OPP breathe out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read through sth</td>
<td>read sth to check details and look for mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sense</td>
<td>have a clear meaning; be logical and easy to understand.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Circle the correct answer(s). Both words may be correct.

1 I stayed | continued up late last night to finish an essay.
2 Most candidates fail because they don't keep | stick to the questions.
3 I was in such a panic my mind just went completely black | blank.
4 Try to keep an ear | eye on the time during a test so that you finish every question.
5 I finished the letter and then I went | read it through carefully to check the spelling.
6 I got stuck | delayed on one question, so I missed | left it out.

5 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

I know it was very silly, but I stayed up very late last night, and through my notes, so this morning I was really tired. I got to the exam feeling very stressed, and I tried to in and out slowly to help myself relax, but I could feel my going blank. Eventually, I looked at the questions, but none of them sense; I was in such a state. Of course, I didn't keep one on the clock and unfortunately, I ran of time. And as a result of that, I had to out the last question completely, so I knew there was not much chance that I would pass. I steered of my friends as I left the room.

6 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in the text at the top true about you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
11 I can talk about ability and progress

A Assessing students

University lecturer Peter Rose gives his honest opinion of some of his students.

Patrick’s a nice guy, but his work isn’t up to much, and frankly things have gone from bad to worse as the term has progressed. I think he’d be better off doing a different type of course, and it wouldn’t surprise me if he dropped out at the end of the year.

By comparison, Charlotte is in her element here. She’s bright, she can think on her feet, and she’s confident in her own ability. She’ll go far.

With Erin, it’s early days. At the beginning of term I felt she sat back too much and let others do all the talking. But now she’s starting to come up with more of her own ideas.

Glossary

not be up to much INF not be very good.

go from bad to worse (of a bad condition or situation) become even worse.

be better off used to suggest that sb should do sth differently.

by comparison leave school or college without finishing your studies.

in your element used for talking about ways in which two people or things are different.

don’t know be able to think and react to things very quickly.

think on your feet be successful in the future.

sit back = it’s too soon to know how sb/sth will develop.

it’s early days relax, especially by not doing anything or not getting involved.

come up with sth produce ideas or a solution to sth.

1 Cross out the wrong word.

1 think on your foot | feet 4 be better | best off doing something

2 by compare | comparison 5 it’s early | earlier days

3 go from bad to worse | worst 6 on | in your element

2 Organize the words into sentences and add one word.

> his | on feet | can | he He can think on his feet.

1 she | her | far | career | in | will

2 was | element | I | at | my | university

3 came | good | she | ideas | with | some

4 sat | did | and | he | nothing

5 college | drop | did | why | she | of |?

6 to | went | from | worse | it

3 Complete the sentences. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 Most of the group are making good progress. By ____________, Sam is quite slow.

2 The new waiter is doing quite well at the moment, but it’s ____________ days.

3 It used to be quite a good school, but it’s not ____________ to much now.

4 I hated university, so I ____________ out at the end of the first year, and got a job.

5 Oscar’s not very good at ____________ on his feet; he needs time to organize his ideas.

6 I think she’d be ____________ off living at home at her age.
8 Assessing the lecturer

Here, the same students give their opinion of Peter Rose.

PATRICK: He's OK, and he knows his stuff, but he's not very encouraging. I always do my best, but he doesn't think much of me.

ERIN: At first I thought he was a bit out of touch, and he wasn't very friendly, but maybe we just got off on the wrong foot. He thought I wasn't pulling my weight, when in fact I was just too shy to say anything. But now I like him a lot more.

CHARLOTTE: I'm getting on well, and that's largely thanks to Peter Rose. He really motivates me and brings out the best in me.

Glossary

know your stuff
do your best
get on
thanks to sb/sth
bring out the best/worst in sb
be out of touch (with sth)
get/start off on the wrong foot
pull your weight

INFL know a lot about a particular subject.
try as hard as possible to achieve sth.
make progress.
used to say that sb/sth is responsible for sth.
make sb behave in the best or worst way that they can.
not know or understand recent ideas in a particular subject or area.
INF make a bad start at a relationship.
work as hard as everyone else in a job or activity.

spotlight think the world of sb/sth, not think much of sb/sth, etc.

These idioms express a high or low opinion of somebody or something:
We don't think much of the boys. = We have a low opinion of them.
He thinks the world of his niece. = He feels great love or affection for her.
She thinks a lot of Patricia. = She has a high opinion of her.

4 Complete the idioms with a suitable verb.

1. be on the wrong foot
2. your stuff
3. your best
4. the world of someone
5. the best in someone
6. not much of something
7. your weight

5 Complete the dialogues.

1. How are you on? ~ Quite well, actually. I got good marks last term.
2. Is she good at her subject? ~ Not really. She's a bit out of touch.
3. Did she like the course? ~ No, she didn't think of it.
4. What's the problem with Eric? ~ He's just not his weight.
5. Is Mr Hall a good teacher? ~ Oh yes, he knows his.
6. Did Nadia pass the exam? ~ Yes, to her uncle; he helped her a lot.
7. What went wrong between you and the teacher? ~ We started off on the wrong foot.
What do you think? How do you think?

I'm often surprised by events. I need to think ahead more.
I accept other people's opinions too easily. I need to think for myself more.
If I have a problem, I like to talk it over with friends or family.
If I have a problem, I prefer to think it over on my own.
I do things on the spur of the moment. I don't think before I make up my mind!
I'm not very good at thinking straight in stressful situations.
I always think twice before lending people money.
I sometimes think back to my time at primary school.

Glossary

think ahead (to sth) think about a future event and plan for it.
think for yourself form your own opinions rather than simply believing what other people say.
talk it/sth over discuss sth with sb, especially to help you make a decision.
think it/sth over/through think carefully about the possible results of sth.
on the spur of the moment suddenly; without planning in advance.
make up your mind decide.
think straight (often used in the negative) think in a clear and logical way.
think twice think very carefully about sth or before doing sth because you know about the possible dangers and problems.
think back (to sth) think about things that happened in the past.

1 One word is missing after think in each sentence. Write it at the end.
   1 I couldn't think; I was nervous and everyone was looking at me.
   2 We must think and decide where we're going for our holidays this year.
   3 He needs to think himself rather than go along with everyone else.
   4 When I think to my school days, I realize how unhappy I was.
   5 If you have a burglar alarm, it makes burglars think about breaking in.
   6 Could you give me a few days to think over?

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 I've got a chance to work abroad, but I'd like to think it _________ first.
   2 Do you ever think _________ to the time you spent in Kenya?
   3 We offered Maria the job but she wants to talk it _________ with her family.
   4 I was under so much stress that I just wasn't thinking _________; I was very confused.
   5 I can't make up my _________ what to wear to the party tomorrow.
   6 Don't listen to what other people say - think for _________.
   7 I just accepted the offer on the _________ of the moment. I wish I hadn't now.
   8 After his accident, he'll think _________ before driving quite so fast.

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences at the top of the page true for you?
Write your own answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
13 I can talk about knowledge and skills

A Did you understand the lecture?
B No, I couldn't take it in. I was too tired.

A Are you any good at maths?
B No, I haven't got a head for figures.

A I'm afraid it's slipped my mind.
B He's a taxi driver, isn't he?

A Yes, he knows London like the back of his hand.
B Well, I'm a bit out of practice but I'll give it a try.

A Did Dave really make that chair himself?
B Yeah, well, he's good with his hands.

A I've never used this computer before.
B It's OK once you get the hang of it.

A Is it OK for Sam to use that machine?
B Yes, sure. He knows what he's doing.

A Do you fancy a game of chess?
B Well, I'm a bit out of practice but I'll give it a try.

Glossary

- take it/them
- have got a (good) head for sth
- slip your mind
- know sth like the back of your hand
- get the hang of sth
- know what you are doing
- out of practice
- give sth a try

fully understand and remember what you hear, see, or read.

be naturally good at doing calculations, remembering facts, etc.

If sth slips your mind, you forget it, or forget to do it.

INF know a place very well.

INF learn or begin to understand how to do sth.

INF have experience in doing sth and understand it fully.

less good at doing sth than you used to be, because you haven't done it for some time.

make an attempt to do sth.

Spotlight Idioms with good

Are you any good at art? = able to draw/paint well.
I'm no good at skiing. = unable to ski well.
He's good with his hands. = able to use his hands well.
He's no good with people. = unable to deal with people well.

1 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.
1 I'm a bit out of the practice these days.
2 She knows what that she's doing.
3 Would you like to give to it a try?
4 Are you no any good at making things?

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)
1 Are you good at your hands?
2 Have you got a good for figures?
3 Do you find it easy to take a lot of factual information?
4 Which town do you know like the of your hand?
5 Are you at cooking? If not, are you prepared to it a try?
6 Do other people's birthdays ever slip your mind?
7 Do you think it's easy for a beginner to get the of skiing?
8 Do you cycle much these days, or are you of practice?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Review: Thinking, learning, and knowledge

Unit 8

1 Tick (/) the correct meaning.

1. If you put something away, you:
   a) hide it where others cannot find it. ☐
   b) put it where you usually keep it, after using it. ☐

2. If you hand something round, you:
   a) pass something, such as sandwiches, to people in a group. ☐
   b) stand in a circle with a group of people, holding hands. ☐

3. If you build up something, you:
   a) make or construct it. ☐
   b) increase or develop it. ☐

4. If you take something in turns, you:
   a) do something one after another so everyone has a chance to do it. ☐
   b) do something by moving round in a circle. ☐

5. If you hand something in, you:
   a) give it to each person in a group. ☐
   b) give it to a person in authority. ☐

6. If you cross something out, you:
   a) remove it with a rubber. ☐
   b) put a line through it, usually because it is wrong. ☐

2 Rewrite the sentences using an idiom or phrasal verb which includes the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

> She drew a line through his name. CROSS She crossed out his name.

1. It's just a small part of a larger problem. ICEBERG
2. Make sure you check your work carefully. OVER
3. OK, let's stop now. DAY
4. Mark, sit in Eve's seat, then Eve can sit in yours. SWAP
5. It's a waste of time if you don't listen. GOOD
6. He's working hard on the course. SERIOUSLY
7. Before we do anything else, turn to page 45. ALL
8. You can omit Exercise 3. LEAVE

Unit 9

1 Complete the definitions.

1. Make sense of something means to manage to something.
2. Keep your mind on something means to continue to something.
3. Stick at something means to continue with something even though it is
4. If something is on the tip of your tongue, it means you it, but can't it at that moment.
5. If you pick up a language, it means you it without making a lot of
6. If something goes in one ear and out the other, it means you it quickly.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1. A How's the Italian course going?
   B Oh, I've been so busy recently that I'm (1) behind with my studies. I'm going to spend a few evenings this week trying to (2) up with the rest of the class.
   A Well, try and (3) it up - it would be a shame to give (4) now.
Unit 10

1 Complete the crossword.

```
1 R
2 R
3 R
4 R
5 R
6 R
7 R
8 R
```

1 get to ________ with something = manage to deal with something
2 ________ something out = solve a problem by looking carefully at the facts
3 keep your fingers ________ = hope that something will be successful
4 it's not the end of the ________ = it's not the worst thing that can happen
5 go ________ something = look at or discuss something carefully
6 clear of someone = avoid someone because meeting them may cause problems
7 out of something = have none of something left
8 ________ in = take air into your lungs

2 Rearrange the words into sentences, and add one word.

- sense | doesn't | this | really | question
- the | blank | exam | mind | my | just | in
- question | the | decided | I | miss | to | first
- read | but | the | sense | I | didn't | it | letter
- her | the | to | did | she | it | of | ability
- work | some | down | I | must | to | now
- too | down | I | detail | bogged | in | much

Unit 11

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 She's come up ________
2 He doesn't know ________
3 I passed the test, thanks ________
4 The teacher was really out ________
5 Things went from bad ________
6 You have to think ________
7 I don't think much ________
8 She'd be better off ________

a to worse.
b doing a different subject.
c his stuff.
d of his work.
e on your feet.
f with a great idea.
g to my teacher.
h of touch.
2 Read the email from a mother who is worried about her son. One word is missing in each line. Where does it go, and what is it?

... and I'm really worried about Sam; he's talking about dropping out of university. The thing is, it's days, and he needs time to get to know the teachers. I'm worried that he has got on the wrong foot with one of them; she's accused him of not pulling weight. I know that Sam appears to back and not say anything, but it doesn't mean he's lazy. He's so different from Mary. Her tutor the world of her, and it's clear that she's in element at Oxford and is enjoying it enormously. She always does her, whatever she's involved in, and I know that she'll far and have a brilliant career. And that really makes it harder for Sam. He needs a good teacher to bring the best in him. I hope he gets better with his studies after the Christmas holidays.

Unit 12

1 Tick (√) the correct answer.

1 She'll need some time to think about the situation before ______ up her mind.
   thinking √ doing making

2 If I were in your position I would think ______ about buying that motorbike.
   back twice straight

3 Before accepting the job, I'd like some time to think ______ for myself √ ahead it over
   back

4 He's very dependent on his parents; he needs to think ______ more.
   for himself √ it over twice

5 I've decided to talk it ______ with my husband and see what we can do.
   back √ over up

6 I couldn't think ______ because too many people were talking.
   twice √ ahead straight

Unit 13

1 Agree with A's questions in the dialogues using a word from the box in each response.

A > B

1 A Does he deal with children well?
   B Yes, he's good with children

2 A She knows this area really well, doesn’t she?
   B Yes, she

3 A She's not a very skilful cook, is she?
   B No, she's

4 A You forgot the appointment, didn’t you?
   B Yes, it

5 A Was it hard to understand and remember all the information?
   B Yes, I couldn’t

6 A You're very good at making things, aren't you?
   B Yes, I'm

7 A It's ages since you played the piano, isn't it?
   B Yes, I'm

8 A Andrew's very good at investing money, isn't he?
   B Yes, he certainly
14  I can talk about getting in touch

Ben

Have you broken the news to the family yet?

Emily

Well, I've been in touch with most of them, but I can't get hold of Uncle Nick.

Ben

No, I haven't heard from him for a while either. Try giving his office a ring.

Emily

I did, but he's not there at the moment, so I've had to drop him a line.

Ben

OK. So, shall I keep quiet about your move until it's common knowledge?

Emily

Yes, please. I don't want anyone to feel they've been kept in the dark.

Ben

Sure. I promise I won't breathe a word.

Glossary

break the news
get hold of sb
hear from sb
give sb a ring
drop sb a line
keep quiet (about sth)
be common knowledge
keep sb in the dark
not breathe a word (about/of sth)

be the first to tell sb about some important news.

INF find or make contact with sb by email or phone.

be contacted by sb by email, phone, or letter.

INF phone sb. SYN give sb a call.

INF write a short letter or email to sb.

say nothing about sth.

be sth that everyone knows.

If you keep sb in the dark, you don't tell them about sth important.

not tell anyone about sth that is secret. SYN not say a word (about sth).

Spotlight in touch

If you are in touch with sb, you are in contact with

them by speaking or writing to them. If you get in

touch with sb, you make contact with them. If you

keep in touch with sb, you continue to have contact

with them. If you lose touch with sb, you no longer

have contact with them.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Have you been in/on touch with Romi?
   4 Have you heard by/from Mari recently?
2 Who dropped/broke the news to Mina?
   5 I said we'd give Irina a call/ring.
3 Don't say/breathe a word to the kids.
   6 I'll drop Vincent a line/call.

2 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idiom in each dialogue.

1 You mustn't say anything. ~ Don't worry, I'll keep __________________ about it.
2 He's upset because we __________________ him in the dark. ~ Well, that's understandable.
3 Have you got in __________________ with Michael since last week? ~ No, not yet.
4 Do they know you're getting married? ~ Yes, I __________________ the news last night.
5 Have you told the class you're having a baby? ~ Yes, it's common __________________ now.
6 Have you tried to get __________________ of the manager? ~ Yes, I __________________ her a ring earlier.

3 ABOUT YOU  Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Which do you use most to get in touch with friends: phone, text, or email?
2 If you thank someone for a present, do you give them a ring or drop them a line?
3 How often do you hear from friends who live in a different town?
4 How often do you get in touch with friends in other countries?
5 Do people find you difficult to get hold of sometimes? If so, why?
I can describe ways of saying things

My boss treats me like a child: she’s always talking down to me.

My sister’s very direct and always speaks her mind, but at least she never talks about people behind their backs.

I shouldn’t have mentioned Joey’s girlfriend; I think I put my foot in it.

My daughter answers me back when I’m annoyed with her. I’m always telling her off for being so cheeky!

Ann gets things across clearly – and she’s the only person who talks sense around here.

My colleague talks non-stop! You can’t get a word in edgeways.

My teacher’s got a very quiet voice; I wish he’d speak up.

Glossary

- talk down to sb: talk to sb as if they are less intelligent or important than you.
- put your foot in it: INF say or do sth that makes sb embarrassed or upset.
- get sth across (to sb): succeed in making sb understand sth.
- talk sense: say things that are sensible and correct. OPP talk nonsense.
- speak up: speak more loudly.
- speak your mind: say exactly what you think in a very direct way.
- behind sb’s back: without sb knowing about it. OPP to sb’s face.
- answer (sb) back: reply rudely to sb who has more authority than you.
- tell sb off (for sth / for doing sth): INF speak angrily to sb for doing sth wrong.
- not get a word in edgeways: not be able to say anything because sb else is talking too much.

1 Would you be happy or unhappy in these situations? Write H (happy) or U (unhappy).

1 You ask a child to do something and he answers you back.
2 You get advice from a lawyer who talks a lot of sense.
3 Someone tells you off for riding your bike through the park.
4 You’re asked to explain a grammar rule and you manage to get it across.
5 Someone talks about you behind your back.
6 You go and see a doctor who talks down to you.
7 You’re in a meeting with your boss and you can’t get a word in edgeways.
8 You’re talking to one of your neighbours and you put your foot in it.

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)

1 If you can’t hear your teacher, do you ask him/her to ____________ up?
2 Is there anyone in your family who tends to ____________ nonsense?
3 Have you ever put your ____________ in it when talking to a friend?
4 Do you prefer people to criticize you to your ____________ , or behind your ____________ ?
5 With a group of strangers, would you always speak your ____________ ?
6 Have you ever ____________ someone off for dropping rubbish in the street?
7 Do you ever have problems getting your meaning ____________ in English?
8 Is it hard to get a word in ____________ with anyone you know? Who?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
16  I can talk about phoning

A Did you **get through to** the complaints department?
B Well, when I rang the first time, I **got cut off**, so I called again. Then someone kept me **hanging on** for ages, and in the end I **hung up**.

A Could I speak to Mr Howey, please?
B **Hold the line**, please, while I **put you through** ... I'm sorry, he can't take your call at the moment. If you leave your number, he'll **get back to** you later.

A Have you **charged up** your mobile?
B Yes, but I've still got to **top it up** before I ring Howard. My phone calls **are costing a fortune**.

---

**Glossary**

- **get through (to sb)**: succeed in speaking to sb on the phone.
  - (usually passive **be/get cut off**) stop or interrupt sb's phone conversation by breaking the connection.
- **cut sb off**: make a phone connection that lets sb speak to sb else.
- **put sb through**: phone or speak to sb later, especially to give a reply.
- **get back to sb**: If you **charge (up)** your mobile, you plug it to a supply of electricity until enough is stored in its battery.
- **top up (your mobile)**: pay more money so that you can make more calls.
- **cost a fortune**: **INF be very expensive. SYN cost the earth** **INF**.

---

**spotlight hang on, hang up, hang up on sb**

If you **hang on** **INF** or **hold on**, you wait for a short time (also, in phone calls, **hold the line**). If you **hang up**, you end a phone call and put the phone down. If you **hang up on sb** **INF**, you end a phone conversation suddenly without saying goodbye.

---

1 **Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.**

   1. There was no answer, so I **hung up** | **hung up on** him.
   2. I was on the phone to the bank when I **cut off** | **got cut off**.
   3. Did you manage to **get** | **put through** to the accommodation officer?
   4. She asked me to **hang** | **hold on**, then they played some horrible music.
   5. It's so expensive to use your mobile abroad; it costs **the earth** | **a fortune**.
   6. Hang on a minute; I've just got to **fill** | **top up** my mobile before we go out.

2 **Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.**

   1. Could I speak to Mark Lawton, please? ~ **Hold the** ~ I'll try and put you **through**.
   2. Have you plugged in your mobile? ~ Yeah, but it'll take half an hour to **top up**
   3. Did you **charge** through to Joe? ~ Yes, but he was in a bad mood and he hung up **on** me.
   4. Did she ask you to **hang on**? ~ Yes, but it was costing a **fortune** so I hung **up**.
   5. Did you manage to speak to Mrs Arkle? ~ Yes, briefly, but we got cut **off**.
   6. Are you busy? ~ I'm afraid so, but I promise I'll get **through** to you by the end of the day.

3 **ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.**

   1. When did you last get cut off during a call?
   2. Do you have to top up your mobile, or do you have a monthly plan?
   3. Have you ever hung up on someone? Who, and why?
   4. Are there certain people you ring who you can never get through to?
I can use short spoken phrases

These short idiomatic phrases are commonly used in particular situations in spoken English.

Come on! Hurry up!
OK, I'm coming!

OK, everyone. Time's up.
Oh no, I haven't finished.

We can't go on like this.
I know.

I'll pour your coffee. Say when.
That's fine. Thanks.

Here you are.
Thanks a lot.

Did you understand what he said?
Sort of.

Shall we go there later?
Yeah, why not?

What's up?
Steve's late, as usual.

OK, here goes. Wish me luck.
Don't worry, you'll be fine.

How come the shop's closed?
I don't know. It should be open.

Do I pay weekly or monthly?
It's up to you.

Well, see you soon.
Yes, all the best.

Guess what? We won.
Oh, that's brilliant!

Glossary

here's to sb/sth used to wish sb health or success as you lift a glass and drink to them.

hurry up do sth more quickly because there isn't much time.

time's up used in exams and competitions to tell people there is no more time left.

I know used to agree with somebody or to say you feel the same way.

say when INF used to ask sb to tell you when you should stop pouring their drink or serving their food because they have enough.

here you are INF used when you are giving sth to sb. SYN there you are/go.

sort of INF to some extent, but in a way that is not easy to explain. SYN kind of.

why not? used to agree to a suggestion. (It can also be used to make a suggestion: Why not phone her?)

what's up? INF = what's the matter?

as usual as happens most of the time. SYN as always.

here goes INF used when you are telling people you are just going to do sth exciting, dangerous, etc., e.g. go down a ski slope.

how come ...? INF used to ask the reason for sth. (Notice the word order in the question: How come you're early?)

all the best INF 1 used when you are saying goodbye to sb (as above). SYN take care. 2 used to wish sb luck, happiness, etc. SYN good luck.

guess what? INF used before telling sb sth interesting or surprising.

spotlight be up to sb

We use this expression to say that something is somebody's decision or responsibility, and usually with the pronoun it.

Shall we stay in or go out? ~ It's up to you. = it's your decision.
It's up to the government to decide this. = it's their responsibility.
1 Complete the dialogues.

1. What time shall we leave? ~ It's ____________ to you.
2. How ____________ we had to pay? ~ I don't know. I thought it was free.
3. Shall we go out tonight? ~ Yeah, why ____________?
4. We must talk to Peter about this. ~ Yes, I ____________. You're absolutely right.
5. ____________, or we'll miss the bus. ~ Yes, all right. I'm coming.
6. What time did you go to bed last night? ~ Oh, 10.30, as ____________.
7. Could you follow his map? ~ Yes, sort ____________.
8. Say ____________. ~ Yeah, that's plenty, thanks.
9. What's ____________? ~ Oh, I've put my mobile somewhere and I can't find it.
10. ____________ what? It's snowing! ~ I don't believe it!

2. What do you say in the situations below? Use the phrases in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guess what?</th>
<th>Here goes.</th>
<th>Say when.</th>
<th>All the best</th>
<th>Hurry up!</th>
<th>What's up?</th>
<th>Here you are.</th>
<th>Time's up.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. Your friend is being very slow.
2. You're pouring some juice for someone and you don't know how much he wants.
3. You're a teacher. It's the end of a test. Tell the class.
4. You're going to tell your friend you've passed your exam. I passed.
5. Your friend is looking very worried about something.
6. You turn and speak quietly to a friend as you stand up to give an important speech.
7. Your friend is going to take his driving test.
8. Your brother asks you for some cash and you hand it to him.

3. Replace the underlined phrase with an idiom that has a similar meaning.

1. Did you understand? ~ ____________.
2. Where's Chris? ~ In bed, ____________.
3. OK, ____________. ~ Thanks.
4. What's the matter? ~ I don't feel well.
5. How many people shall we invite? ~ ____________.
6. See you next week. ~ Yeah, ____________.

4. Complete each speech bubble with a suitable idiom.

5 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate the idioms on page 42 into your own language? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student who speaks your language.
# I can use phrases with *say*, *tell*, and *see*

## A Say and tell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you planning to leave your job?</td>
<td>I’d rather not say is a polite way to say you don’t want to give sb some information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ I’d rather not say at the moment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want a coffee?</td>
<td>I wouldn’t say no (to sth) INF used to say you would like sth, or to accept sth you are offered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ I wouldn’t say no.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That was a really awful exam.</td>
<td>you can say that again INF = I agree with you completely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ You can say that again!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you speak to Mr Ellis?</td>
<td>I have to say (that) / I must say (that) INF used for emphasizing an opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Yes, I have to say, he was very rude.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We need a new carpet in the hall.</td>
<td>whatever you say used to agree with sb’s suggestion, even if you don’t like it, because you don’t want to argue about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ OK, whatever you say.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tell me</strong>, how was your trip to Dubai?</td>
<td>tell me INF used before asking a question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Well, it was hot, to say the least.</td>
<td>to say the least used to say that you could have expressed sth in a much stronger way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Andrea getting married?</td>
<td>that would be telling INF used to say that you can’t give some information because it is secret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ That would be telling.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it going to rain tomorrow?</td>
<td>I couldn’t tell you INF used to tell sb that you do not know the answer to their question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ I couldn’t tell you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You were right – the train was at 6.00.</td>
<td>I told you (so) INF = I warned you about sth; you didn’t listen but now you can see I was right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ You see? I told you so!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you enjoy the play?</td>
<td>to tell you the truth INF used to say what you really feel or think.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ To tell you the truth, it was boring.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Complete the phrases with *say* or *tell* in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Correct Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>me, why did he leave?</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I you so!</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>You can that again!</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I’d rather not</td>
<td>I couldn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>That would be</td>
<td>I couldn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Whatever you</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I have to, it was great.</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>To you the truth, I was wrong.</td>
<td>I couldn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>I couldn’t you.</td>
<td>I couldn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>It was cold, to the least.</td>
<td>It was cold,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Correct Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Goodness, it’s really hot in here. ~ You can I can’t stand it.</td>
<td>I have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I think the best thing would be to take a taxi. ~ OK, I don’t mind.</td>
<td>I don’t mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I shouldn’t have left the money in the hotel bedroom. ~ Well, I told I’m really hungry.</td>
<td>I’m really</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>How was the journey? ~ Well, it was uncomfortable, to me, how much do you earn? ~ I’d I don’t do the shopping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>That’s my business.</td>
<td>I don’t want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How much is a litre of olive oil? ~ I couldn’t I don’t do the shopping.</td>
<td>I don’t want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Shall we have something to eat? ~ Hm, I wouldn’t I’m really hungry.</td>
<td>I’m really</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Are you seeing Henry tonight? ~ To tell I don’t really like him, so no.</td>
<td>I don’t really</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How did you enjoy the show? ~ Well, I have, it was very entertaining.</td>
<td>I have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who’s going to be in the next Bond movie? ~ Ah, that would I!</td>
<td>I!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44 Communicating with people
### B See

| I need more help with the horses. | OK, I'll see what I can do. but I've got to go now. See you later. |
| Could I have the morning off? You see, my brother's arriving from Cairo. | Yeah, I don't see why not. |
| Who's the oldest in your class? | Hmm, let's see ... It must be Angelo. |
| Mark thinks I should join a gym. | Well, you could try it and see how it goes. |
| I'm not sure I want to go to the wedding. | Oh, it'll be wonderful - you'll see. |
| Have you finished the painting? | Yes, see for yourself. |

---

**Glossary**

| I'll see what I can do | I'll try to help. |
| you see | INF used when you are explaining sth. |
| I don't see why not | INF used to say 'Yes' when sb asks for sth. |
| let's see / let me see | INF used to say that you are thinking, or trying to remember sth. |
| see how it goes | INF used to say that you will decide about a situation after letting it develop for a short time. SYN see how things go. |
| you'll see | INF used to tell sb that they will find out you were right about sth. |
| see for yourself | used to tell sb to look at sth to check that what sb has said about it is true. |

---

**spotlight Greetings**

Phrases with *see* are commonly used when saying goodbye to someone you know, especially when you expect to see them again soon, e.g. see you later / tomorrow or simply see you! See you around or see you soon are used if you are not sure when you will see the person again.

---

3 **Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.**

1. There isn't much time, but I'll see that I can do.
2. Bye, Flor! ~ Bye, Angie – seeing you!
3. How long is it since we met? ~ Well, let's see ... Ten years, I think.
4. She hasn't cleaned the car, has she? ~ Yes, just go and see yourself!
5. Shall I invite Jamie for dinner? ~ I don't see why no.
6. I'm hoping the plan will succeed, but we'll see how a thing goes.

---

4 **Complete the dialogues. You will need more than one word.**

1. Is it OK if I leave my bike here? ~ Yeah, I don't
2. Have you put up the new fence yet? ~ You can see
3. I'd better go now. ~ OK - around!
4. I'm not sure I'll pass this test. ~ Oh, come on, it'll be fine - you
5. How far is it to the city centre? ~ Er ... it must be about two kilometres.
6. I'm not sure she's the right person for the job. ~ Well, let's see how
7. I really need someone to help me with the furniture. ~ OK, well, I'll
8. Why were you late? ~ Well, I woke up late, and by then the traffic was bad.
A Short responses

- Shall we get the bus?
  - Yeah, if you like.

- Did you say you’d go?
  - Not exactly. I said I might.

- Can I borrow this?
  - Sure, go ahead.

- Thanks a lot.
  - Not at all.

- I’ve forgotten your book.
  - Never mind.

- It’s at Platform Five.
  - I beg your pardon?

- I’m bored with this.
  - Yeah, same here.

- Where shall we go?
  - I’m not bothered.

- Was the day a success?
  - Er, yes and no.

- How are you?
  - Not bad.

Glossary

if you like
INF used to agree with sb’s suggestion to do sth.

not at all
used as a polite reply when sb thanks you. SYN you’re welcome.

same here
INF = the same thing is also true for me (or we sometimes say me too).

not bad
INF quite good (also not too bad).

not exactly
used when you are correcting sth that sb has said.

never mind
used to tell sb not to worry or be upset.

I’m not bothered
= it’s not important to me. SYN it’s all the same to me.

yes and no
used when you cannot give a clear answer to sth.

go ahead
often used to give sb permission to do sth or use sth.

spotlight I beg your pardon FML.

When you say I beg your pardon? with a rising voice, you are politely asking somebody to repeat what they have just said. SYNs Sorry? (or I’m sorry?).

With a falling voice, you are saying sorry, e.g. for pushing someone (I beg your pardon – I didn’t see you there.). SYN I’m very/terribly sorry.

1 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 Not at all. | Not exactly.
2 I’m not bothered. | It’s all the same to me.
3 Not at all. | You’re welcome.
4 Me too. | Same here.
5 Never mind. | I don’t mind.
6 I’m very sorry. | I beg your pardon.

2 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms that have a similar meaning.

1 How are you? ~ Fine.
2 I’ve got two brothers. ~ Yeah, me too.
3 Do you want to eat out tonight? ~ Yeah, that’s fine by me.
4 I’m afraid I can’t go tonight. ~ It doesn’t matter.
5 Thanks a lot. ~ Not at all.
6 Ooh! That’s my foot! ~ I beg your pardon.
7 Was the holiday a success? ~ In some ways it was.
8 Shall we have pasta or rice? ~ It’s all the same to me.
9 Could I borrow this pen? ~ Yes, of course.
10 What’s the title of the play? ~ Sorry?
B Exclamations

An exclamation is a sound, a word, or a short phrase which you say when you are surprised, angry, impressed, etc. When written down it has an exclamation mark (!).

| She's got eight children. ~ You're joking! | INF used to express surprise. SYN You're kidding! INF |
| I saw Jamie smoking, and he's only twelve. ~ Good grief! | used to express shock or surprise. SYN Good heavens! Goodness me! |
| I missed the last train home. ~ Bad luck! | used to express sympathy. SYN Hard luck! |
| It's my maths exam this afternoon. ~ Good luck! | used to wish sb success with sth, e.g. an exam. SYN (The) best of luck! |
| Have you got a new girlfriend? ~ Mind your own business! | a rude way to tell sb not to ask questions about sth private. SYN It's none of your business! |
| We need more honesty from politicians! ~ Hear, hear! | a way of saying you strongly agree with someone. |

spotlight More idioms with goodness

The use of goodness in these idioms developed so that people could avoid using the word God, which some people found offensive.

Where's Tom? ~ Goodness knows! = I don't know (emphatic).
I got the job. ~ Thank goodness! used to show you are relieved.
I've lost the key again. ~ For goodness sake! used to show you are annoyed or impatient.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.
1 Is your sister married? ~ That's not none of your business!
2 We must improve housing for the poor. ~ Here! Here! | Hear! Hear!
3 That boy's cycling really fast. ~ Yes, watch out! | mind out!
4 The cinema was full and I couldn't get in. ~ Oh, best of luck! | hard luck!
5 There were sixty students in my class. ~ Good grief! | You're kidding!
6 The train fares are going up again. ~ For goodness sake! | Goodness knows!

4 Complete the responses with a suitable exclamation.
1 We lost the tennis match in the end. ~ Oh, !
2 How much money do you earn? ~ ! I'm not telling you.
3 It's my job interview tomorrow at the BBC. ~ ! I hope you get it.
4 I won first prize in the competition. ~ !
5 Ninety per cent of my class failed the exam. ~ ! That's shocking.
6 What's the capital of Mali? ~ ! Actually, I'm terrible at geography.
7 I'm going to sneeze ... ah ... ah ... atishoo! !
8 I finally got a letter to say I don't have to leave my flat. ! That's great.
A Informal written messages

Carlos
Really sorry, but could you possibly put the rubbish out? By the way, Joanne rang – she said it was something to do with dinner tomorrow.

Must dash, Stuart

Hello Anne
Bad news I'm afraid – I can't meet you for lunch after all. Something's cropped up at work – an important meeting, and I can't get out of it. But have you got anything on tomorrow lunchtime? Perhaps we can get together then.

Give my love to Larry.

Claire

Glossary

put sth out
by the way
something to do with
(l) must dash
after all
crop up
got out of sth
have (got) sth on
get together

take sth out of your house and leave it outside.
used when you add a new topic into a conversation.
= something connected to or involved with.
= I must go quickly because I'm in a hurry.
used when sth is different from what you expected.
happen or appear, especially when it is not expected.
avoid doing sth you should do or said that you would do.
have an arrangement to do sth.
meet socially, or in order to discuss sth.

spotlight Sending greetings to other people

When you are talking or writing to someone, you can ask them to give a greeting from you to someone else. Referring to friends or family, you can say: Give my love to Sam or Give Sam my love; referring to someone you know less well, say: Give my regards to Sam or Remember me to Sam.

1 Cross out one wrong letter, and write the correct word at the end.

- Sorry, something's chopped up. cropped
- I can't let out of this.
- Sorry, I must dash – I'm late.
- I can't come tonight after ill.
- Did you cut the rubbish out?

5 Shall we get together tonight?
6 Have you got anything on tonight?
7 Please give my love to Lilia.
8 Oh, by the day, when's the party?

2 Complete the messages.

Hi Jenny
Thanks for your message. I'm afraid something's (1) cropped up tonight, and I've got things (2) every evening this week, but let's get (3) some time soon. (4) me to Alec. Love, Judy

Hi Gianna
Bad news – I didn't get the job (5) all. Well, I'll get over it. Oh, (6) the way, did you know Ali's moving next week? Isn't that great? Give my (7) to Erno. Love Anne

Hi Lauren
Sorry, there's a meeting on Tuesday, and I can't (8) it out of it. It's (9) to do with salaries, so I have to go. Anyway, please give my (10) to the rest of the team. Speak soon, Martin.

Communicating with people 48
B Informal voice messages

Hi, it's me. I'm just **popping out** for half an hour – I've got to **drop Mum off** at the station and do a bit of shopping. I'll be back by 6.00 **at the latest**. OK, bye.

Lucy, hello – it's Dad – I thought I'd just **call by** and see you around lunchtime. I've got a meeting **just round the corner from** you. Let's have a chat then. OK, bye.

Hi Anton, it's Paddy – thought it **was about time** I gave you a ring. **What have you been up to**? Anyway, can you **ring me back** when you've got a moment? Cheers!

Hi, it's me. Look, I'm completely **snowed under** with work, and I don't think I'll be able to **get away** before 9.00. And then Mac and I were thinking of having supper together if we **feel up to** it, so don't **wait up for** me, will you? Bye.

---

**Glossary**

*pop out*  INF go somewhere for a short time.
*drop sb/sth off*  take sb/sth to a place by car and leave them(it) there.
*at the latest*  no later than the time or date mentioned. OPP **at the earliest**.
*it's about time*  used to say that you think sb should do sth very soon.
*What have you been up to?*  INF = What have you been doing?
*ring sb back*  1 phone sb who has called you (as above). 2 ring sb again.
*call by*  make a short visit to see sb as you pass. SYNs **drop by, call in**.
*(just) round the corner*  nearby (round the corner from a place = very near to the place).
*be snowed under*  have too much work to deal with.
*get away (from sb/sth)*  succeed in leaving a place or a person.
*feel up to (doing) sth*  have the strength or energy to do sth.
*wait up (for sb)*  not go to sleep until sb comes home.

3 Complete the dialogues.

1 Minnie's very boring, isn't she? ~ Yes, I kept trying to get **from her at the party**.
2 Did you get the message from Nic? ~ Yes. That reminds me, I must ring him
3 Have you written the report yet? ~ No, I won't finish until Friday at the **time you did something**!
4 I've got to **out and buy some food. ~ Yes, it's time you did something!**
5 What are you **to tonight? ~ Oh, I'm going to a party. Don't up for me**.
6 It would be lovely to see you again. ~ OK, well I'll by one evening after work.

4 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

- He's just gone out for a few minutes. POP **He's just popped out for a few minutes.**
- What's she been doing recently? **UP**
- Meet me no later than 5.00. LATEST
- Could you give me a lift to the doctor's? **DROP**
- I'll try to leave work by 7.00. **GET**
- I'm not sure I have the energy to do it. **UP**
- It's very close to where I'm staying. **CORNER**
- I've got too much work at the moment. **SNOWED**
- I'll come and see you on my way home. **CALL**
21 I can say what I think

A Giving opinions

What do you make of Mrs Nesbeth?
She seems nice, and her old boss
thought highly of her.

He's the best politician we've got.
Yeah, without a doubt.

How was the film?
I didn't think much of it, to be honest.

Dogs are wonderful companions.
Yes, I couldn't agree more.

What do you think of the new doctor?
Not much. For one thing, he's a bit rude.

The government's made a big mistake, as far
as I'm concerned.
Well, up to a point, but in the long run
it won't make any difference.

But that's beside the point, isn't it? So long as
he's good at his job.

Glossary

What do you make of sb/sth?
think highly / a lot of sb/sth
to be honest
for one thing
without (a) doubt
I couldn't agree more
as far as I'm concerned
in the long run

What's your impression of sb/sth?
have a very good opinion of sb/sth.
OPP not think much of sb/sth.
used when telling sb what you really think.
used to introduce one or more reasons for sth.
used for emphasis to mean 'very definitely'.
I strongly agree.
used to introduce your own opinion about sth.
not immediately, but at a time in the future.
SYN in the long term.

Spotlight point

Point often occurs in idioms used in discussions.
That's beside the point. = not relevant to the thing being discussed.
That's true up to a point. = to some degree but not completely.

1 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 I don't think ______ of this fish. ~ To ______ honest, it was very cheap.

2 What do you ______ of the new boss? ~ As far as I'm ______, he's the best we've had.

3 If you work hard, you can achieve anything. ~ That's only true ______ to a point.

4 He's a really nice man. ~ But that's beside the ______ ~ he's no good at his job.

5 I know the manager thinks ______ of him. ~ Yes, I couldn't ______ more.

6 Why didn't you like the hotel? ~ Well, for one ______, our room wasn't very clean.

2 Correct one word which is wrong in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.

Travel broadens the mind. ~ Well, that's true up to the point. up to a point

1 As far that I'm concerned, we don't learn from the past.

2 For be honest, I'd be happier if the police didn't carry guns.

3 I don't think more of our public transport.

4 Most people think lot of our Prime Minister.

5 In the large run, we'll need different fuel for cars.

6 With a doubt, we're too dependent on computers.

3 ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree with the statements in Exercise 2? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
8 Pros and cons

A I've got to write an essay on the **pros and cons** of social networking sites.

B Well, I suppose it's a good way to keep in touch with friends.

A Yes, but you can meet new people too. That's the best thing about them if you ask me.

B Yeah, **to some extent**, but **for the most part**, I think face-to-face relationships are most likely to last. And **the thing is**, you don't know if strangers are telling you the truth online.

A Yes, you've got a point. But that's also true if you're speaking to someone face to face.

B **Fair enough.** I accept that. But **even so**, I still prefer talking to people face to face. Anyway, these sites are **here to stay** whether we like them or not.

---

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pros and cons</th>
<th>the advantages and disadvantages of sth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if you ask me</td>
<td>INF in my personal opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to some extent</td>
<td>used to say that sth is only partly true. SYNs <strong>to a certain extent, in some ways.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the most part</td>
<td>in general. SYNs <strong>by and large, on the whole.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the thing is</td>
<td>used for emphasizing what you think is the most important point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you've got a point</td>
<td>used to say that you think sb has made a reasonable statement. INF used to show you understand and accept what sb says.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair enough</td>
<td>despite that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even so</td>
<td>If sth is <strong>here to stay</strong>, it is generally accepted and has become part of life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here to stay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S (same) or D (different).

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>That's true, by and large.</td>
<td>That's true to some extent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>On the whole, we agree with him.</td>
<td>For the most part, we agree with him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>If you ask me, it's a big mistake.</td>
<td>In my opinion, it's a big mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The reason is, he's talking nonsense.</td>
<td>The thing is, he's talking nonsense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>What he says is fair enough.</td>
<td>What he says is here to stay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>It's true, but even so, it's not fair.</td>
<td>It's true, but despite that, it's not fair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

5 One word is missing from each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

A What are the and cons of buying a flat? (1)
B Well, some ways it's easier to rent than to buy. (2)
A I know, but so, your own home eventually increases in value. (3)
B You've got a, that's true. But once you buy a flat, it's harder to move. (4)
And for the part, it's cheaper to rent than to buy. (5)
A Fair, that's an important point. (6)
B And the thing, you don't have to decorate it or worry about repairs. (7)
A To a certain that's true, but people like to choose their own decor. (8)
So, you ask me, owning is far better in the long run. (9)
I can talk about jokes that go wrong

'I said something to Tina in class and she **burst out laughing**. Then the teacher **told** her off:

'I was **pulling his leg** when I said he'd lose the game, but he **took it the wrong way**.'

The other contestants **made fun of** Max's singing, but I just **felt sorry for** him. Anyway, Max **had the last laugh** because he won the competition for the most original act!

'I played a trick on my dad, but it **went wrong**. I put salt in the sugar bowl; I only **did it for a laugh**, but he **hit the roof**.'

'I don't know why they're always **laughing at** Mary – she's very nice.'

'Matthew tried to **make a joke of** the fact that I was upset, which was very silly of him.'

'For a laugh, I told my sister that I'd seen her boyfriend with another girl. The trouble is she **can't take a joke**, so we're **not on speaking terms** at the moment.'

'He was trying to be funny, but he just **made a fool of himself**.'

'I thought he was making a joke, so I laughed – but I'd **got the wrong end of the stick**. It wasn't a joke at all – he was being completely serious.'

**Glossary**

- **burst out laughing**: suddenly start laughing out loud.
- **tell sb off** (for sth / for doing sth): INF speak angrily to sb because they have done sth wrong.
- **pull sb's leg**: INF play a joke on sb, often by telling them sth which isn't true.
- **take sth the wrong way**: be upset by a comment which is not intended to be unkind.
- **make fun of sb**: laugh at sb or make others laugh at them, usually in an unkind way.
- **feel/be sorry for sb**: feel sadness and pity for sb.
- **have the last laugh**: be successful or win an argument in the end, when other people thought it was impossible.
- **go wrong**: develop badly and cause problems.
- **(do sth) for a laugh**: INF become very angry.
- **hit the roof**: not be prepared to be friendly towards each other, usually because of an argument.
- **not be on speaking terms**: do sth that makes others think you are stupid. (If you **act/play the fool**, you behave in a stupid way in order to make other people laugh.)

**make a fool of yourself**

**get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick**: INF understand sth wrongly.

**Spotlight: Expressions with joke**

If you **make a joke of something**, you laugh at something which is serious or important, and not funny.

If you **can take a joke**, you are able to laugh at a joke about yourself and not get upset.

If you **get a joke**, you understand it. When people tell us a joke we don't understand, we often reply:

*Sorry, I don't get it.*

Communicating with people
1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
1 Don’t pull
2 Don’t make fun
3 Don’t feel sorry
4 Don’t laugh
5 Don’t make a fool
6 Don’t make a joke
7 Don’t take it
8 Don’t tell

a of him.

b of yourself.

c of it.

d his leg.

e him off.

f the wrong way.

g at him.

h for him.

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences (a and b). Write it in.

1 a It all went ________.
   b She took it the ________ way.

2 a He ________ a joke about it.
   b He ________ a fool of himself.

3 a I feel sorry ________ her.
   b I did it ________ a laugh.

4 a He can’t take a ________.
   b I didn’t get the ________.

5 a I had the last ________.
   b They often ________ at him.

6 a He ________ the wrong end of the stick.
   b I don’t think she ________ the joke.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 He made a joke about my driving, but when I passed my test, I had the final | last laugh.
2 We had an argument and I’m afraid we’re not on speaking | talking terms.
3 I didn’t think it was a very funny joke, but everyone else burst | burst out laughing.
4 She thought I was serious, when, in fact, I was just pulling her hair | leg.
5 We thought we were doing the right thing, but it all became | went wrong.
6 I don’t know how she misunderstood, but she just got the wrong part | end of the stick.
7 When my mother saw the mess we’d made she hit the roof | ceiling.
8 He thinks he’s funny, but mostly he’s just making a fool of himself | himself a fool.

4 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the meaning similar. You will need more than one word.

1 He did it as a joke.
2 She can laugh at herself.
3 He was being silly.
4 Why are they laughing at him?
5 He misunderstood me.
6 Her mother was angry with her.
7 They suddenly started laughing.
8 She got very angry.

He did it for ________.

She can take ________.

He was acting ________.

Why are they making ________?

I’m afraid he got the wrong ________.

Her mother told ________.

They burst ________.

She hit ________.

5 Read each situation, then write a sentence to comment on each one.

> It was a joke but she thought I was being serious. She took it the wrong way.
1 I told them a funny joke, but they just looked at me.
2 He kept running around the room with a saucepan on his head. Nobody else thought it was funny.
3 I said we already had 18 chairs and we needed 24, but he thought I meant we needed 18 plus 24 – in other words, 42.
4 We had an argument and she got really angry with me. Now she won’t talk to me.
5 I was planning to take the train but Bob said there were no trains in the winter. Then I realized he was only joking.
6 My aunt had a hard life, and my mother was always very sympathetic towards her.
Review: Communicating with people

Unit 14

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
   1 get hold
   2 drop someone
   3 give someone
   4 keep
   5 keep quiet
   6 keep someone
   7 don't breathe
   8 lose
   a in touch
   b a ring
   c touch with someone
   d in the dark
   e of someone
   f a word
   g a line
   h about something

Unit 15

1 Complete the text.
   There's a man I sometimes meet at the gym who I find really annoying. The thing is, he likes to dominate
   the conversation, and I find that I can never get a word in (1) . I do my best to get my point of view (2)
   , but he just ignores everything I say. You always have the feeling that he thinks you're much less knowledgeable
   or interesting than him, and that he's talking (3) to you. And what's really annoying is that he (4)
   nonsense most of the time anyway. The other thing about him is that he's very direct, and as a result he can seem
   rather rude, which sometimes upsets people. In fact, the other day, his girlfriend (5) him for
   offending someone. But perhaps he just feels it's better to say things to your (6) rather than (7) your back.

Unit 16

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?

1 I can't give you the answer now, but I'll (3, 4) to you later today with the figures.
2 I spoke to a friend in China for an hour, and the call cost the (4) !
3 Could I speak to Mrs Baker? Yes, please, and I'll see if she's free. (4, 2)
4 Can I (6, 2) my mobile, please? The battery's flat.
5 I've got to (3, 2) my mobile or I won't be able to make any calls.
6 She was very rude: she (3) up on me in the middle of the call.
7 I tried ringing Danny but I couldn't get (6) : his phone was engaged.
8 The phone company did some work on my landline and it cost a
   (6) please, and I'll try and put you through. The word in the grey squares is (9).
Unit 17

1 Cross out the wrong word; write the correct word at the end.

1 Could you pass me the crisps, please? ~ Sure, here you have.
2 I'm not going to class today. ~ Really? Why no?
3 Has he brought his dictionary? ~ No, he's forgotten it, as usually.
4 You look upset - who's up? ~ Oh, it's my cat; she's very ill.
5 Come on, hurry on, we've got to be there by nine o'clock.
6 Guess that? The president is coming to visit our school.
7 Have some juice. ~ Lovely. ~ Just tell when. ~ That's enough.
8 I think it's your turn to drive. ~ Why come? I drove last time.
9 OK, class, that's it. Time's over. ~ Oh, no, I haven't finished!
10 See you after my holiday. ~ Yeah, all the better.
11 Was the restaurant very expensive? ~ Yeah, kind off.
12 Shall we go to an Indian restaurant? ~ I don't mind; it's up for you.

Unit 18

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you say To tell you the truth, you are going to say what you really think.
2 If you say I'd rather not say, you mean you don't know the answer to something.
3 If you say I'll see what I can do, you're telling someone that you're going to try and help them.
4 If you say See you around, you mean that you will see the person later that day.
5 If you say Let's see, you are giving yourself time to think or remember something.
6 If you say I told you so, it means that you had warned someone about something and they didn't pay attention to you.
7 If you answer a question with That would be telling, it means you are going to give the person the information they want.
8 If you say I couldn't tell you, you mean you don't know the answer to something.

2 Complete the last word of each idiom, and then underline the full idiom in each dialogue.

1 I thought she was awful. ~ You can say that
2 Is the pizza restaurant any good? ~ Well, I like it, but go and see for
3 Do you think it will work? ~ I'm not sure, but let's see how it
4 Was it wet? ~ Yes, and very cold to say the
5 Would you like a coffee? ~ Yeah, I wouldn't say
6 Can we go in now? ~ Yeah, I don't see why
7 Could I come on Thursday? ~ Er, let me
8 What are you going to do with the money? ~ Well, to be honest, I'd rather not

Unit 19

1 Correct one mistake in each answer. Write the correct idiom at the end.

1 I've had some bad news; I didn't get that flat. ~ Oh, hard lucky. I am sorry.
2 Are you selling your flat? ~ I'm not telling you - it's not of your business!
3 Manuel's got a new girlfriend. ~ Good heaven!
4 Thanks so much for your help. ~ No at all.
5 Shall we have pasta or a pizza? ~ It's all the same for me. You decide.
6 How long will we have to stay here? ~ Goodness knows it!
7 How are you, Manuel? ~ Oh, no bad, thanks.
8 I can't come tomorrow. ~ Oh, don't mind. We'll go another day.
2 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YOU'RE</th>
<th>MIND</th>
<th>HEAR</th>
<th>HEAR</th>
<th>GO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JOKING</td>
<td>YOUR</td>
<td>BLESS</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>AHEAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUSINESS</td>
<td>OWN</td>
<td>YOU</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'M</td>
<td>IF</td>
<td>YOU</td>
<td>LIKE</td>
<td>THANK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>BEG</td>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>GOODNESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOTHERED</td>
<td>PARDON</td>
<td>YOUR</td>
<td>AT</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You say this politely when someone thanks you for something. **Not at all.**
- 1 You say this when someone sneezes.
- 2 You say this when you give someone permission to do something.
- 3 You say this when you are very relieved about something.
- 4 You say this when you are surprised.
- 5 You say this when you are agreeing with something someone has said.
- 6 You say this when you are saying sorry to someone.
- 7 You say this when you mean 'I don't care'.
- 8 You say this when someone is trying to find out private information that you don't want to give them.
- 9 You say this to agree to someone's suggestion.
- 10 You say this when you can't give a very clear answer to certain types of question.

Unit 20

1 Tick (√) the correct column.

1 *Call by* means 'give someone a ring'.
2 *What have you been up to?* means 'What have you been doing?'
3 *Crop up* means 'continue'.
4 *Get out of something* means 'do something that you promised to do'.
5 *Wait up for someone* means 'not go to bed until someone else comes home'.
6 *I've got something on tonight* means 'I'm doing something tonight'.
7 *Remember me to your father* means 'Ask your father to remember me'.
8 *Drop someone off* means 'take someone somewhere in your car'.
9 *Six at the latest* means 'no later than six o'clock'.
10 *I'm popping out* means 'I'm staying out'.

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wait</th>
<th>after</th>
<th>up to</th>
<th>about</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>get my</th>
<th>to do</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>together</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>dash</th>
<th>all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I'm in a terrible hurry – sorry, I ________. See you tomorrow!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 She was going to be late, so she told her mother not to ________ for her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Emily wants to talk to you; I think it's something ________ with the wedding.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I think it's ________ we were leaving. Thanks for a lovely dinner.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I've had a tiring day so I don't really feel ________ going out tonight.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 We must try and ________ one evening - when are you free?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 If you see Jamie tonight, will you give him ________? I really miss him.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 The film didn't start till 8.00, so we could have got to the cinema on time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 21

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out an idiom. What is it?

As I'm concerned, the risk is too great.
What did you of his talk? ~ I thought it was brilliant, actually.
What you say is true, up to a
We need more nurses. ~ I couldn't more; you're absolutely right.
That's true to a certain , but don't forget how much it would cost.
She says eating meat is wrong, but to be , I'd find it hard to give it up.
What are the and cons of living in a student hostel?
He was without one of the best leaders our country has ever had.
She's been a marvellous employee; her bosses have always thought of her.
I could never be a pilot; for one , I'm terrified of flying.

The idiom in the grey squares is

Unit 22

1 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAKE</th>
<th>HIT</th>
<th>MAKE</th>
<th>FUN</th>
<th>OF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>ROOF</td>
<td>BURST</td>
<td>SOMEONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOKE</td>
<td>PULL</td>
<td>SOMEONE'S</td>
<td>OUT</td>
<td>TELL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>TERMS</td>
<td>LEG</td>
<td>LAUGHING</td>
<td>SOMEONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>SPEAKING</td>
<td>FOR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>FOOL</td>
<td>LAUGH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Play a joke on someone by telling them something that isn't true. pull someone's leg
1 Behave in a silly way to try and make people laugh.
2 Criticize someone angrily for doing something wrong.
3 Laugh at someone, often in an unkind way.
4 An informal way to say 'become very angry'.
5 Not prepared to be friendly with each other after an argument.

6 Be able to laugh at a joke about yourself and not get upset.
7 Another way of saying 'as a joke'.
8 Start laughing suddenly and out loud.
23 I can describe actions

1 They're shaking hands.
2 His arms are folded.
3 He's shaking his head (= 'No'). OPP nod your head (= 'Yes').
4 She's standing on tiptoe.
5 She's throwing the carton away.
6 She's got her legs crossed.
7 They're walking hand in hand (also they're holding hands).
8 He's blowing his nose.
9 He's doing his jacket up.
10 He's hanging his jacket up.
11 She's put her jumper on inside out.
12 He's put his jumper on back to front.
13 He's just fallen over.
14 She's tripped him up.
15 The cyclist knocked her over.
16 He's knocked him out.

spotlight Phrasal verbs with knock

If you knock sb over/down, you hit them and make them fall to the ground (see Picture 15).
If you knock a building down, you destroy it by breaking the walls.
If you knock sb out, you make them become unconscious (see Picture 16); or you make them fall asleep.
E.g. The drugs knocked him out.
1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
   1 Don’t cross
   2 He sat with his arms
   3 Do your
   4 They’ve knocked the building
   5 My top was inside
   6 I fell
   7 Blow
   8 Hang it
   a over on the grass.
   b down.
   c folded.
   d your nose.
   e up behind the door.
   f your legs.
   g coat up.
   h out.

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
   She sat down and crossed her arms. (legs)
   1 I think he’s nodding his hand.
   2 He’s wearing his T-shirt front to back.
   3 They’re shaking hand.
   4 The little boy can’t do out the buttons on his shirt.
   5 The drugs completely knocked me over.
   6 She told the children to fold their hands.
   7 That stupid boy tripped me down.
   8 She felt over on the ice.

3 Complete the sentences.
   1 I didn’t fall over – she pushed me and _______ me over!
   2 He _______ me up when I was running for the ball, and I fell on my face.
   3 I saw your sister and her boyfriend in the park, and they were walking hand in _______.
   4 I think you’ve got your skirt on back to _______.
   5 Where can I _______ up my coat? – There’s a hook behind that door.
   6 You’ll be able to see through that window if you stand on _______.
   7 The children sat on the floor with their legs _______, waiting for the teacher.
   8 Please don’t throw the newspaper _______; I haven’t read it yet.

4 Use an idiom or phrasal verb to explain what the people are doing, or have done, in these situations.
   I think he’s saying ‘yes’. He’s nodding his head.
   1 They’re meeting for the first time.
   2 She doesn’t want those old magazines.
   3 I think he might have a cold.
   4 The label is showing on his T-shirt.
   5 I think she’s saying ‘no’.
   6 He hit me and I was unconscious for a minute.
   7 He can only just see over the wall.
   8 Maybe they’re boyfriend and girlfriend.

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
   1 Do people usually shake hands when they meet?
   2 Do people nod their head to mean ‘yes’?
   3 Is it rude to blow your nose in public?
   4 Do young people often hold hands in public places?
   5 Do women ever walk hand in hand in your country?
   6 Have you ever been knocked out by anyone?
   7 Have you ever been knocked over by a bicycle or motorbike?
   8 What was the last thing you threw away?
I take after my father. We’re both tall – that runs in the family – and we both have a passion for the outdoor life. I was brought up on a farm and always looked up to my father, so it was no surprise when I followed in his footsteps and joined him on the family farm. Basically farming is in my blood, and it’s been our way of life for five generations. Working with Dad is great. He knows the business inside out, and enjoys showing me the ropes. And from his point of view, he likes to have someone younger with new ideas – even if they aren’t that good!

Glossary

- take after sb: look or behave like an older member of your family.
- run in the family: be found very often in a family.
- bring sb up: care for and teach a child until they are an adult (also bring sb up to do sth).
- look up to sb: respect and admire sb.
- follow sb’s footsteps: do the same job or activity as sb else who did it before you.
- in your blood: it is a strong part of your character.
- a way of life: the behaviour and customs that are typical of a person or a group.
- know sth inside out: have a lot of knowledge of sth (also know what you are talking about).
- point of view: a way of looking at a situation; an opinion.

1. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
   1. He hopes to follow my footsteps.
   2. She has a different point view.
   3. My sister takes my mum.
   4. Politics is my blood.
   5. Baldness seems to run my family.
   6. It’s a different way life.

2. Complete the text.

   My father was a classical pianist. He knew the works of Mozart inside (1) and performed them all over the world. He (2) me up to love music as well; it seems to be something that (3) in our family. However, I eventually (4) in my mother’s footsteps and became a doctor, and, by coincidence, it was my uncle (my mother’s brother) who showed me the (5) when I got my first job in a hospital in London.

3. Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 4.)
   1. Where were you up as a child?
   2. Who do you most after in your family?
   3. Would you like to follow in anyone’s?
   4. Is there anyone you particularly up to in your family?
   5. Is there a physical characteristic that in your family?

4. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
When my mother gave birth to twins, I don’t suppose she knew what she was letting herself in for. Although I’m nothing like Elle, we were equally horrible. If she pulled my hair, I got my own back by hiding her favourite doll; she always burst into tears when I did that. And then we grew into even more difficult teenagers. We stayed out late, and were always getting into trouble at school for smoking, wearing make-up, or just being lazy. Our poor mother tried to turn a blind eye to some of our behaviour, but it wasn’t easy. Then, by some miracle, we grew up. We’re both quite nice now!

Glossary

- give birth (to sb) produce a baby.
- let yourself in for sth involve yourself in sth that will probably be unpleasant or difficult.
- nothing like sb/sth completely different from sb/sth (also not anything like sb/sth).
- get your own back (on sb) do sth unpleasant to sb in return for sth unpleasant they did to you.
- burst into tears suddenly start crying.
- grow into sth gradually develop into a particular kind of person.
- get into trouble (for sth) get into a situation in which you may be punished.
- turn a blind eye (to sth) pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad (in this case, so that she didn’t have to do anything about it).
- grow up develop into an adult.

Spotlight stay out/in, stay up

If you stay out, you continue to be away from your home, especially late at night. If you stay in, you stay at home and don’t go out. And if you stay up, you go to bed later than usual.

5 Put the words in the correct order and add one missing word.

She turned a blind eye to it.

> turned | it | she | eye | to | a
1 she | why | tears | into | did | ?
2 my | I’ll | back | get | her | own
3 birth | she | twins | to | has
4 school | trouble | at | I | got | often
5 watch | he | to | up | a | late | film
6 handsome | he’s | man | a | grown | young
7 she | brothers | is | nothing | her
8 yourself | what | in | you | let | have | ?

6 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 7.)

1 Where did you grow?
2 Did your parents let you stay late to watch TV when you were young?
3 As a teenager, could you stay late when you were with friends?
4 Do/Did your parents ever turn a eye to things you do/did?
5 Do/Did you ever into trouble at school? If so, what for?
6 Do you remember getting your own on someone for something horrible they did to you?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A The young about the old

'The older generation are always going on about young people. They seem to think we're to blame for everything that goes wrong in the world. Why can't they leave us alone?'

'It's true older people are a bit out of touch when it comes to things like technology, but on the whole I think they're probably more open-minded than they used to be.'

'Many older people are set in their ways, and that can make them a bit narrow-minded.'

'I sometimes feel more at ease with older people because they're not trying to impress you. I think maybe it's easier to be yourself as you get older.'

Glossary

go on (about sth/sb) talk about sth/sb for a long time, especially in a boring or complaining way.
be to blame (for sth) be responsible for sth bad. SYN be at fault.
leave sb alone stop annoying sb.
be out of touch (with sth) not know or understand what is happening in a particular subject or area.
when it comes to sth / doing sth = when you are talking about sth / doing sth.
be set in your ways have attitudes and habits for a long time that you don't want to change.
feel/be at ease (with sb) feel comfortable and relaxed (with sb).
be yourself act naturally.

spotlight on the whole

There are various idioms we can use to introduce a generalization:

On the whole
In general
By and large

people become more conservative as they get older.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence. Write the correct idiom at the end.

1 By the whole I enjoyed it.
2 Just leave me lone and go away.
3 She's largely with fault.
4 In generally I don't eat breakfast.
5 He's very settled in his ways.
6 I feel in ease with them.
7 I'm out from touch with computers.
8 Who is for blame?

2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I feel relaxed with Liz and Clive.
2 Just act naturally.
3 She's to blame.
4 He has very fixed attitudes.
5 Stop annoying me.
6 I'm not good with numbers.
7 I don't know much about politics now.
8 Don't keep talking about it.

I feel at
Just be
She's at
He's very set
Leave
I'm not good when it
I'm out of
Don't go
B The old about the young

"Young people get up to all sorts of things nowadays. Parents probably give in to them too much, and let them get away with things. But in general, they're all right."

'More and more young people still live off their parents in their late 20s and early 30s. They should be standing on their own two feet at that age.'

'I sometimes find it difficult to get through to young people. We seem to be worlds apart. Maybe I'm just behind the times.'

'I never take offence when young people say old people are boring. I felt exactly the same when I was young.'

Glossary

get up to (sth) Inf do sth, especially sth you shouldn't do.
give in (to sb) stop fighting or arguing with sb and accept you can't win.
get away with sth not be punished for sth you have done wrong.
more and more in increasing numbers or at an increasing rate.
live off sb rely on sb else to provide you with food, money, etc.
stand on your own two feet not need the help of other people; live or act independently.
get through to sb make sb understand what you are trying to say.
be worlds apart be completely different in attitudes, opinions, etc.
behind the times old-fashioned in your ideas, methods, etc.
take offence (at sth) feel upset or hurt (by sth).

3 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

> The kids always ask for sweets, and in the end I usually _in_ give

1 He doesn't understand what I say; I just can't _through_ to him.
2 She made a mistake but she was lucky; she _got_ with it.
3 The area is becoming more and more _dangerous_.
4 What have the children been _getting_ to?
5 They're worlds - they have absolutely _nothing_ in common.

4 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 I've learnt to be independent. ~ That's right, you can now _stand on your own_ off his parents? ~ Yes, they pay for everything. And he's 40!
2 He's a bit old-fashioned. ~ I agree; he's a bit _behind_.
3 The brothers are completely different. ~ Yes, it's strange: they're _worlds_ apart.
4 Was she upset at what you said? ~ No, I don't think she _took_.
5 There's no point in arguing with him. ~ Yes, it's easier just to _agree_.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Did your parents give in to you very much when you were younger?
2 Did you get away with things at school when you were younger?
3 Do you ever find it difficult to get through to your parents/children?
4 Do you still live off your parents?
5 Do you think you and your parents are/were worlds apart?
A Getting on with the neighbours

We live next door to a young family. When we first moved in we invited them for tea to break the ice, and, since then, we’ve got along well. We have a lot in common, and they’re always willing to help out. One day I got locked out, and Millie, the wife, gave me a lift to my husband’s office to get a spare key. On the other side there’s an old lady living all by herself who doesn’t get out and about much. It’s so sad; she needs someone to keep her company.

Glossary

next door (to sb/sth) in the next house or flat.
move in start living in a new house or flat. OPP move out.
break the ice say or do sth that makes people feel more relaxed, e.g. at the beginning of a party.
get along have a friendly relationship (also get along with sb). SYN get on well (with sb).
have sth in common have similar interests (also have sth in common with sb).
help (sb) out help sb in a difficult situation. SYN lend sb a hand.
lock sb out/in lock a door so that sb cannot get out or in.
give sb a lift take sb somewhere in your car.
all by yourself completely alone (‘all’ adds emphasis). SYN on your own.
get out and about go to places where you can meet people.
keep sb company go or be with sb so that they are not alone.

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.
1 We have a lot in common. G
2 You get along with your neighbour. G
3 Someone gave you a lift. G
4 You got locked in. B
5 Your friend offers to keep you company. G
6 A noisy neighbour has just moved in. B
7 You can’t get out and about for a month. B
8 Someone helps you out with your studies. G

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 3.)
1 Do you live all yourself? If not, who with?
2 What do you have common with the people next to you?
3 How would you break the if you had new neighbours?
4 Do you have any elderly neighbours? Do you ever them company?
5 Have any of your neighbours a lift? If so, where to?
6 Have you ever got out of your house and asked a neighbour for help?
7 Which of your neighbours do you get well with, and why?
8 Do your neighbours ever lend you a with things?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
8 Throwing a party

Planning to throw a party? Here's how to stay on good terms with your neighbours!

- Make sure you let the neighbours know you're having a party, and more or less how long it will go on. If you like, invite them round.
- When it starts to get late, turn the music down to an acceptable level.
- Keep the windows closed when the party is in full swing.
- When the party is coming to an end, ask your guests to leave quietly, and not to stand around outside chatting. You don't want to run the risk of waking your neighbours up.
- If it all goes well, thank the neighbours afterwards for putting up with any noise.

Glossary

throw a party
have a party for your friends, family, etc.
on good/bad terms (with sb)
having a good/bad relationship with sb.
let sb know sth
tell sb about sth.
invite sb round
INV ask sb to come to your home.
turn sth down
reduce the volume of sth. OPP turn sth up.
in full swing
at the stage when there is the most activity.
come to an end
finish (also bring sth to an end).
stand around/about
stand somewhere not doing anything.
run the risk of (doing) sth
do sth that could have a bad result.
put up with sth/sb
accept sth/sb that is unpleasant, without complaining.

4 Write sentences using words from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She</th>
<th>me</th>
<th>around outside.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It was</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>on all night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The guests invited</td>
<td>of upsetting people.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The party in full</td>
<td>up with the noise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who stood</td>
<td>the music up?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They couldn't went</td>
<td>swing by 11.00.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They ran turned</td>
<td>us around.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did it put</td>
<td>know if you can come.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please let</td>
<td>the risk to an end.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

» She invited us around.

5 Complete the text. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

My next-door neighbour decided to (1) a party last weekend. Unfortunately, we're on bad (2) , because the last time he invited some people (3) , they all stood (4) outside making a lot of noise, and we had to complain. This time, however, he (5) us know in advance about the party, and he told us it wouldn't (6) on after midnight. I looked out of the window at about 11.30 to see what was going (7) , and it was really quiet - he must have turned the music (8) , and he actually brought the party to an (9) soon afterwards, which was great.
A Describing fear

When Bob first suggested we went up in his hot-air balloon, it never crossed my mind that I would be nervous. But on the morning of the flight, I was starting to get butterflies in my stomach. And by the time we were on board and were about to take off, I was shaking like a leaf. I tried to take my mind off it by concentrating on my breathing, but I was in a terrible state. And I jumped out of my skin when I heard the noise from the gas burner – I just couldn’t help it. In fact, it was amazing once we were up in the air, and I started to calm down. I realized Bob was very experienced and I was in safe hands.

Glossary

get/have butterflies in your stomach
be about to do sth
shake like a leaf
be in a state
jump out of your skin
can’t help (doing) sth
calm down / calm sb down
be in safe hands

feel very nervous before doing sth.
on a ship, plane, hot-air balloon, etc.
be going to do sth very soon.
shake a lot because you are frightened or nervous.
be very anxious or upset (also be in a terrible state).
make a sudden movement out of fear.
used to say that sb cannot stop or avoid doing sth.
become or make sb become more relaxed.
be with sb who will look after you very well.

spotlight idioms with mind

It never crossed my mind that we would lose. = I never thought that we would lose. (Often used in negatives.)
You’ve got a lot on your mind. = There are a lot of things that you are thinking and perhaps worrying about.
Going to the gym took my mind off the exams. = made me stop thinking and worrying about them.

1 Rewrite the sentences, correcting the mistakes.
   1 I’ve got flies in my stomach.
   2 She’s about for leave.
   3 He ran out of his skin.
   4 He’s got something at his mind.
   5 She won’t help making mistakes.
   6 Don’t worry, you’re on safe hands.

2 Complete the text.

I’ve got a big exam tomorrow and I know I’ll be in a terrible (1) ________ when I wake up. I get so nervous – I just (2) ________ help it. It has crossed my (3) ________ once or twice that I should really do something about it, and find a way to help myself (4) ________ down. The only thing that seems to (5) ________ my mind off it is food, unfortunately! But I know that tomorrow, I’ll be outside the exam room, shaking like a (6) ________ , as usual.

3 Complete the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 4.)
   1 Have you got a lot ________ your mind at the moment?
   2 When did you last get butterflies in your ________ , and why?
   3 Do you feel nervous when you’re ________ to go on a journey? Why?
   4 If someone was ________ board a plane and feeling very nervous, what would you suggest to ________ them down?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B A range of feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If ...</th>
<th>it means</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you're having the time of your life, INF</td>
<td>you're enjoying yourself very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you're thrilled to bits, INF</td>
<td>you're very happy and excited about sth. SYN be over the moon INF (see page 144).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you're in the mood (for sth), INF</td>
<td>you feel you would like to do sth. e.g. I'm not in the mood for shopping today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you go red (in the face), INF</td>
<td>your face becomes red because you are embarrassed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you lose your temper (with sb), INF</td>
<td>you get very angry (with sb). OPP control your temper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If sb's behaviour makes you sick, INF</td>
<td>it makes you very angry and upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you're bored to tears, INF</td>
<td>you're very bored. SYN bored stiff INF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you're feeling on edge, INF</td>
<td>you're feeling nervous and unable to relax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you get cold feet about a decision, INF</td>
<td>you suddenly become nervous about sth you have planned to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you don't know whether to laugh or cry, INF</td>
<td>you feel upset about sth bad that has happened but can also see there is sth funny about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If it breaks your heart to see or do sth,</td>
<td>you're extremely upset about it. e.g. It would break my heart to move from this old house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you're feeling down in the dumps, INF</td>
<td>you're feeling depressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Match 1–8 with a–i. Do the sentences express positive or negative feelings? Write P or N at the end.

- It broke f
  1 I wasn't in the a to tears.
  2 She saw Louis and just went b in the dumps at the moment.
  3 I don't know why she's down c of their lives at the adventure playground.
  4 We were thrilled d red in the face.
  5 I just felt e on edge for some reason.
  6 The children had the time f my heart to see my son leave home. N
  7 We were bored g mood for going to a party.
  8 I completely lost h my temper with him.
  9 I feel about the wedding. i to bits about the wedding.

6 Complete the texts. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

Poor Jasmine's got her driving test tomorrow and she's terrified. I hope she doesn't get cold (1) and not turn up for the exam.

I hate flying, so when I got to the airport I was really on (2) . And then they announced a four-hour delay on the flight. I didn't know whether to laugh or (3)

Gemma was feeling a bit down in the (4) and definitely not in the (5) for a sad movie, so we went to a jazz café instead. It was fantastic – we had the time of our (6) and laughed all the way home.

The man next door is really irritating; he's always leaving his rubbish just outside my front door, and it (7) me sick. Whenever I see him I ask him to move it, and then he does; but I find it very hard to (8) my temper when I'm talking to him.
A Young love

Ask Claire's advice

SUE: I was very flattered when Chris started chatting me up at a party because I didn't think I'd be his type. But we really hit it off, and then started seeing a lot of each other. The thing is, though, his mother thinks the world of him and has done everything she can to come between us and try to split us up. I'd be so upset if we broke up because of her - I'm just crazy about him.

CLAIRE REPLIES: Start by putting yourself in his mother's shoes. She can see you've both fallen in love and she probably thinks she's losing her son for good. Be patient, and try to make friends with her - it's the only solution.

Glossary

chat sb up
be your type
hit it off
think the world of sb
come between people
split people up
break up
crazy about sb
put yourself in sb's shoes
fall in love
for good

INF talk to sb in a friendly way because you are attracted to them.
INF be someone with the qualities that you find attractive.
INF form a good relationship on first meeting (also hit it off with sb).
INF feel great love or affection for sb.
cause an argument or difficulty between people.
cause two people to stop having a relationship.
stop having a relationship (also break up with sb). SYN split up (with sb).
INF very much in love with sb. SYN mad about sb INF.
Imagine you are in the same situation as sb. SYN put yourself in sb's place.
start to love each other (also fall in love with sb, SYN fall for sb INF).
for ever.

1 Tick (√) the correct phrases. Be careful: one, two, or all three may be correct.

1 I think she's fallen in love □ mad about □ fallen for □ him.
2 I won't let anyone come between □ split up □ break up □ us.
3 Why don't you try and put yourself in his shoes □ eyes □ place □?
4 Do you think Max and Jan will hit it off □ hit it off □ fall for each other □?
5 I'm not sure he will be Lucy's type □ chat Lucy up □ come between Lucy □.
6 She is crazy about □ is mad about □ thinks the world of □ him.

2 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb or idiom.

1 He's a terrible liar; I hope she leaves him and never comes back.
2 He really loves his little niece.
3 She's not the kind of person I find attractive.
4 We met at a conference and we really got on very well.
5 I wish you would imagine you were in my situation.
6 He seemed attracted to me and talked to me in the bar.
7 It's sad, but they've decided to separate.
8 They're very much in love with each other.
B Enduring love

BETTY: Alf took his time to ask me out, but it was love at first sight for me, and I couldn’t wait to get married. It’s not all been easy though. You have to put up with each other’s bad habits; and Alf has a few. But we’ve stuck together, and we’re very happy.

ALF: It took me a while to pluck up the courage to ask Betty out, but we had lots in common and we built on that. Plus we worked hard at our relationship. With some young couples nowadays it seems that if anything goes wrong, one of them walks out. And lots of couples just seem to drift apart.

Glossary

take your time
ask sb out

love at first sight
can’t wait / can hardly wait
put up with sth/sb
stick together
pluck up (the) courage (to do sth)
built on sth
go wrong
walk out (on sb)
drift apart

do sth without hurrying.
invite sb to go somewhere because you want to start a romantic relationship with them.
love or attraction that you feel for sb when you see them for the first time.
If sb can’t or can hardly wait for sth, they are very excited about it.
accept sth/sb that is unpleasant, without complaining.
INF (of two or more people) stay together and support each other.
make yourself do sth even though you are afraid to do it.
use sth as the basis on which to develop and make progress.
develop badly and cause problems.
INF leave sb you are having a relationship with.
(of two or more people) slowly become less close or friendly.

3 Write the last word in each sentence.
1 It was great at first, then things started to go
2 There’s no hurry; take your
3 The important thing in our relationship is that we’ve stuck
4 I’m going to ask her out if I can pluck up the
5 I saw her at a concert and it was love at first
6 We enjoyed the same things, and that gave us something to build
7 I’m meeting Gordon after work this evening. I can hardly
8 Everyone thought they were in love, then one day, he just walked

4 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 5.)
1 Do you believe in at first sight? Why / why not?
2 Have you ever found it difficult to up the courage to ask someone ? When, who with, and why?
3 What are the main reasons why relationships wrong?
4 Do you know many couples who have together for a long time?
5 Which bad habits do you find difficult to up with?

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A Brad's annoying habits

Amy:

I love Brad, but some things about him get on my nerves!

- He keeps on leaving his clothes all over the place.
- He doesn’t do his fair share of the housework.
- He’s always showing off in front of our friends.
- He spends ages messing around on the computer.
- He tells the same jokes over and over again.

But I have to take into account the fact that he lived on his own for years. Being married is completely different – you need a bit of give and take.

Glossary

get on sb’s nerves: INF annoy sb; make sb angry.
keep (on) doing sth: continue doing sth, often in an annoying way.
all over the place: in a very untidy state.
your fair share of sth: a fair and reasonable amount of sth (often used about work).
show off: try to impress people by showing them how clever you are. (A person who does this is a show-off.)
mess around/about: spend time in a relaxed way without a real purpose.
over and over again: many times; repeatedly. SYN again and again.
take sth into account: consider sth, especially when you are making a decision.
on your own: alone. SYN by yourself.
give and take: INF a situation in which you do things or compromise for other people, and they do things or compromise for you.

1 Circle the correct word.
1 She’s messing along | around upstairs.
2 I said it out | over and over again.
3 I’ll have to take | make it into account.
4 The papers are all about | over the place.
5 She’s a terrible show-up | show-off.
6 I keep on | in forgetting to post it.
7 He tried to do it by | on his own.
8 He does his right | fair share of the work.

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb or idiom.
1 He loves being the centre of attention – he’s always
2 It was terribly untidy; there were books and magazines
3 You have to listen to other people’s opinions; there has to be some
4 Did she get help with that, or did she do it
5 She’s had health problems this year, so when we make a plan we should
6 They still don’t understand, although I’ve explained it
7 My phone keeps ringing but then there’s no one there; it’s really
8 We spent a relaxing weekend on the boat, just
B Amy’s annoying habits

Brad:
I love Amy, but these things drive me round the bend!

- She’s always putting me down in front of other people, or making jokes at my expense.
- She’s always tidying my things away, then I can’t find them; it drives me up the wall.

- When she doesn’t want to discuss something important, she just changes the subject.
- She changes her mind about what to wear, then bites my head off if I get impatient.
- She always puts off paying bills till the last minute.

But even though we have our ups and downs, I love her very much, and it cheers me up to see her face every morning.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put sb down</td>
<td>INF say things to make a person look stupid or silly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at sb’s expense</td>
<td>against sb, so that they look silly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidy sth away</td>
<td>put sth where it is kept in a drawer, cupboard, etc., so that it cannot be seen. start talking about sth different.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change the subject</td>
<td>change your decision or opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change your mind</td>
<td>INF answer sb in a very angry way. delay doing sth until a later time or date. the latest possible time before sth happens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite sb’s head off</td>
<td>a mix of good times and bad times. make sb happier (cheer up! = be happy).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off doing sth</td>
<td>INF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth off</td>
<td>the last possible time before sth happens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the last minute/moment</td>
<td>INF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ups and downs</td>
<td>INF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheer sb up</td>
<td>INF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S (same) or D (different).
1 She got very angry with me. | She bit my head off.
2 He’s always putting me down. | He’s always trying to make me do something later.
3 He sent her a present to cheer her up. | He sent her a present to make her happy.
4 Why did you change the subject? | Why did you change your mind?
5 It all happened at the last minute. | It all happened at that moment.
6 I put my appointment off till Friday. | I changed my appointment to Friday.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- The noise makes me really upset. WALL The noise drives me up the wall.
- I love putting everything in order. AWAY
- We’ve had plenty of good times and bad times. UPS
- They all had a good laugh at me. EXPENSE
- Should we delay buying the car? PUT
- Don’t get angry with me! BITE
- The kids are driving me up the wall. BEND

5 ABOUT YOU Look again at Sections A and B. In your notebook, write six things that other people do which drive you up the wall, or talk to another student.
A Horoscopes

**ARIES**
21 March – 20 April

Something is getting in the way of your happiness. So far, you’ve kept your feelings to yourself, but there’s no time to lose – confide in that important person in your life. Don’t sit around doing nothing, or else you may regret it.

**TAURUS**
21 April – 21 May

Today’s the day for a big change. You know your heart isn’t in your work, and it’s time to do something else with your life. If the worst comes to the worst, you can count on your friends to help you find your feet.

---

Glossary

- get in the way of sth
- so far
- keep sth to yourself
- (there’s) no time to lose
- confide in sb
- sit around
- or else
- your heart isn’t in sth
- if the worst comes to the worst
- count on sb/sth

---

**spotlight idioms with feet**

If you find your feet, you become confident in a new situation, especially one that is difficult to start with. If you have or keep your feet on the ground, you have or maintain a sensible, practical attitude to life.

---

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1. There’s no time  
2. If the worst comes  
3. I don’t think we can count  
4. It’s obvious that her heart  
5. Take the money now, or  
6. You can’t just sit  
7. Don’t let your work get  
8. I’m sure you’ll find  

a. isn’t in the job.  

b. else you might forget about it.  

c. around all day at home worrying.  

d. in the way of your happiness.  

e. to lose.  

f. your feet very quickly.  

g. to the worst, I’ll leave.  

h. on Maggie to help us.

---

2 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.

- Is she reliable? COUNT Can you count on her?

1. I can tell Molly any secrets I have. CONFIDE
2. Until now, nobody has arrived. FAR
3. Keep a sensible attitude to life. GROUND
4. If things get really bad, will you help me? WORST
5. Don’t spend time doing nothing all day! AROUND
6. He’ll soon become confident in his new job. FEET
7. She didn’t tell anyone the news. HERSELF
8. He’s not excited about this project. HEART
B Do you believe in horoscopes?

MOONLOVER Do I believe in horoscopes? Yes, I do – most of mine come true!

AMAL I dare say there's something in it ... you never know, do you?

STARGIRL Yes I do, but we mustn't let them take over our lives.

INDY NO!! Life's too short to waste on reading that nonsense.

DISCOMAN Not any longer. Just think about it. Every Aries in the world having the same thing happen to them every day? Come on!

LEOSCEPTIC Are they true? It's anyone's guess. I just read them for fun, and I think most people are too sensible to base their lives on horoscopes.

**Glossary**

believe in sth feel certain about the truth or existence of sth.

come true If a wish, hope, or prediction comes true, it really happens.

take over sth used to say that sth that was true before is not true now.

not any longer / no longer used to show that you do not believe sth that sb has said. (The stress is on the 'on'.) used when you are saying that sth is possible.

come on! used to say that there are true facts or acceptable ideas in what sb says. OPP there's nothing in it/sth.

I dare say INF used to say that you can't be certain of sth.

you never know INF = don't spend your time doing things or worrying about things that are unimportant.

life's too short INF sth that nobody can be certain about.

anyone's guess INF: sth that is enjoyable, and for no other reason.

(just) for fun use an idea or fact as the starting point from which other things can develop.

base sth on sth

3 Cross out one wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

Do you believe on magic? __ in.

1 She said things were getting worse, and I dare said that is true.

2 I love my new job, but I have to say it's taken out my life.

3 Have you based your decision in the information in the paper?

4 I went to an evening class just for funny, and it was great.

5 The weather was so awful that we couldn't stay there no longer.

6 You think he's going to lend you $500? Come in! He'll never do that.

4 Complete the dialogues. Then underline the complete idioms or phrasal verbs.

1 Do you think he'll win the election? ~ Well, you never __________. He might!

2 Can he really predict the future? ~ Of course not. What he told me didn't come __________.

3 Do you believe __________ ghosts? ~ I used to, but not any.

4 Are you concerned about the future? ~ No, life's __________ short to worry about that.

5 I think he's got a very good idea there. ~ Yes, there's __________ in it.

6 Do you think they'll win the championship? ~ Who knows! It's anyone's

5 ABOUT YOU Do you read your horoscopes? If so, do you believe in them? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Review: People and relationships

Unit 23

1. Write down five more things that people are doing in the picture; then answer the questions.

![Image of people in a room, one man hanging up a jacket]

A man is hanging up his jacket.

1. Has the woman sitting down got her legs crossed?
2. Has she got her arms folded?
3. Has anyone fallen over?
4. Is anyone doing their coat up?
5. Is the boy wearing his cap back to front?
6. Is the man in the white coat shaking his head?

Unit 24

1. Match 1-8 with a-h.

1. show a. into trouble with the police
2. follow b. someone the ropes
c. a blind eye to something
3. get d. in the family
e. into tears
4. burst f. in someone's footsteps
5. turn g. after someone
6. give h. birth
7. run
8. take

2. Complete the text.

My father (1) up in a small town in Ireland. He was (2) up by his grandparents because his parents both died when he was quite young. My father really (3) up to his grandfather, and always wanted him to feel proud of his grandson. For that reason, perhaps, he never got into serious (4) as a child, and rarely (5) out late in case his grandparents worried about him. I'm afraid I'm (6) like my father in that respect – I never come home before midnight when I go out. But then we live in a city and it's a completely different way of (7). Also, I know the place inside (8), so my parents don't worry about me.
Unit 25

1. Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.

live  stand  get  take  give  feel
get  be  go  leave  be

touch  alone  in  on  yourself  feet
through  off  offence  away  ease

> If you are out of touch with something, you no longer have recent knowledge or information about it.
1. If you someone, it means you depend on someone else for the money or food you need.
2. If you to someone, it means you stop arguing with them and accept that you can’t win.
3. If someone about a subject, it means they talk about it so much that people become bored.
4. If someone asks you to them, it means they want you to stop annoying them.
5. If you at with someone, you are comfortable and relaxed when you are with them.
6. If someone with a crime, it means they aren’t punished for what they have done.
7. If you on your own two, it means you are independent and can look after yourself.
8. If you at something somebody says, it means you are hurt or upset by it.
9. If you act naturally, it means you can
10. If you can’t to someone, it means you can’t make them understand what you want to say.

Unit 26

1. Complete the dialogues.

1. Can you tell me if you decide to have the party? ~ Yes, I’ll you know immediately.
2. Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I said I’d them a hand.
3. Did you have to walk to the station? ~ No, Edwin gave me a .
4. Did anyone help you with the cleaning? ~ No! I did it all by !
5. The music’s a bit loud. ~ Yeah, sorry, I’ll it down a bit.
6. They share a lot of interests, don’t they? ~ Yes, they have a lot in
7. Shall we ask her to come for lunch? ~ Yes, I told her we’d her round sometime.
8. I’ve finally found a new flat. ~ Excellent! So when are you in?

2. Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

1. He’s a really annoying neighbour; I don’t know how you put out with him.
2. You don’t want to run the risk in being on bad terms with the people next door.
3. Did the meeting come to an end naturally, or did you have to take it to an end?
4. Since she’s been ill, she’s not been able to get round and about much.
5. How about the people upstairs – are you getting long with them now?
6. She doesn’t have many friends so I try to help her off whenever I can.
7. He’s on his own a lot, so he’d love it if you held him company sometimes.
8. We played a game at the beginning to break an ice and it really worked.
Unit 27

1 Complete the dialogues.
1 Didn't you realize he would be angry?
2 She looked very anxious before the test.
3 Those fireworks gave me a shock.
4 Were you a bit nervous before the interview?
5 Was the office party boring?
6 You must have been delighted to win.
7 Are they going now?
8 Was the lecture interesting?
~ No, it never _______ my mind.
~ Yes, she was in a terrible _______.
~ Me too. I nearly jumped out of my _______.
~ Well, I felt a bit on _______, but not too bad.
~ Not at all. We had the time of our _______.
~ Yes, I was _______ to bits.
~ Yes, they’re _______ to leave.
~ No, I was bored to _______.

2 Complete six more idioms by using a word from the left and a picture from the right.

over stomach go shake cold whether break

> go red

Unit 28

1 Complete the crossword using the clues. The letters in the grey squares spell out a word. What is it?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 It was a case of love at ________ sight.
2 He's very pleasant, but he's not my _______. I prefer more mature men.
3 He would do anything for his wife; he thinks the _______ of her.
4 Has Jake fallen for Amanda, do you think? ~ Yes, he's about her.
5 I wouldn't like anything to come _______ us.
6 Whatever happens, my parents will always _______ together; they'd never break up.
7 Has he left her for _______ ? ~ Yes, he'll never come back.
8 If anything goes _______ between them, they sit down and talk about the problem.
9 Try putting yourself in your friend's _______ - how do you think she's feeling?
10 He saw me sitting alone and tried to _______ me up - but then my boyfriend turned up!
11 We made a good start in our marriage and managed to _______ on that.
12 It's very sad; I never thought they would _______ up, but they have.
Unit 29

1 Complete the definitions.
   1 drive someone up the wall = make someone very ________.
   2 cheer someone up = make someone ________ than they were.
   3 keep on doing something = ________ doing something.
   4 get on someone’s nerves = make someone ________.
   5 bite someone’s head off = answer someone in a very ________ way.
   6 change your mind = change your ________ or decision.

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the phrasal verbs and idioms in the table. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GIVE</th>
<th>OVER</th>
<th>SHOW</th>
<th>BY</th>
<th>PUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>MYSELF</td>
<td>SOMETHING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAKE</td>
<td>OVER</td>
<td>AGAIN</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPPS</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>MINUTE</td>
<td>LAST</td>
<td>TAKE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUND</td>
<td>DOWNS</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>CHANGE</td>
<td>SOMETHING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE</td>
<td>BEND</td>
<td>SUBJECT</td>
<td>ACCOUNT</td>
<td>INTO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We’ve had our ups and downs, but in general we have a very happy marriage.
- I didn’t want to talk about sport, so I tried to
- He waited until ________ before deciding what the team would be.
- In a relationship you need some ________ for it to be successful.
- Your situation is different from the others, so I’ll ________ when I make my decision.
- He leaves all the lights on all the time – it drives me ________
- The little boy kept saying the same thing
- We can’t have the party on Saturday, so we’re going to ________ until later in the year.
- He likes to ________ on the tennis court, especially when girls are watching.
- Dad wanted to help me fix the car, but I said I’d prefer to do it

Unit 30

1 Complete the phrase that is being defined.
   1 If you ’ ________ in something’, you are certain that something exists.
   2 ‘There’s no time to ________’ is used to tell somebody to hurry.
   3 If something is OK ‘so ________’, it is OK until now.
   4 If you ‘keep your feet on the ________’, you keep a sensible attitude to life.
   5 If your ________ isn’t in something, you’re not very interested or excited about it.
   6 If a wish or hope ‘ ________ true’, it really happens.
   7 If you do something ‘just for ________’, you do it for pleasure, and for no other reason.
   8 If you ‘find your ________’, you become confident and know what to do in a situation.

2 Complete the horoscope.

**GEMINI**
22 May – 21 June

Work has taken (1) ________ your life in recent months, but it mustn’t get in the (2) ________ of your personal life over the next two weeks, or (3) ________ you could miss a great opportunity. Someone (a member of the opposite sex) has been (4) ________ something to themselves for a long time, but not (5) ________ longer: and I dare (6) ________ you know who I’m talking about! They are going to confide (7) ________ you, and – you never (8) ________ – it could be the beginning of an important stage in your life. Don’t miss it.
The day will **start off** with a bit of sunshine, but you'll need to **make the most of** it because it'll soon **cloud over**, and by lunchtime **the chances are** we'll all get a shower. The rain may **die out** in the south, where it could even **brighten up** during the afternoon, but further north there will be more showers **here and there**. If you were hoping for better things tomorrow, I'm afraid you're **out of luck**, and Friday could be the third wet day **in a row**. **Looking on the bright side**, though, things may **pick up** by the weekend.

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Define</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>make the most of sth</strong></td>
<td>enjoy sth while you have the opportunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cloud over</strong></td>
<td>become cloudy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>the chances are (that)</strong></td>
<td>it is likely/probable (that) ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>die out</strong></td>
<td>gradually disappear and stop completely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>brighten up</strong></td>
<td>improve and become brighter (usually with more sunshine).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>here and there</strong></td>
<td>in various places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>out of luck</strong></td>
<td>unlucky. <strong>OPP</strong> <strong>in luck</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in a row</strong></td>
<td>one after the other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>look on the bright side</strong></td>
<td>be optimistic; think positively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pick up</strong></td>
<td>improve; get better.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight**

**Start off** and **start out** both mean 'begin to happen, or begin doing sth', e.g. *We started off/out after breakfast and arrived at lunchtime.*

We often use **start out** to talk about something beginning in one way and developing in another way: *I started out as a vet, then went into business.*

We use **start off** when we talk about something beginning in a particular way: *Let's start off with a review of last week's work.*

1. Choose the correct answer.

   1. Even when things are really bad, Harry still looks on the bright | brighter side.
   2. The centre is quiet now, but the **probabilities** | **chances** are it'll soon be busy.
   3. We were **in luck** | **out of luck**: we had five cold, wet days in a **line** | **row**.
   4. There's plenty of snow for skiing, so let's make **more** | **the most of** it.
   5. We are expecting a few showers **there and here** | **here and there** this afternoon.
   6. The rain is quite heavy at the moment, but it'll soon **die out** | **die off**.
   7. Business was slow at first, but I'm sure it'll **get up** | **pick up** soon.
   8. Shall we **start off** | **start out** with soup?

2. Complete the text with suitable words.

   We decided to go down to the coast, and were hoping for good weather. We **(1) start off** early to avoid the rush hour and also to **(2) make the most of** the day. The weather forecast said it had **(3) cloud over** and there during the night, but luckily it **(4) brighten up** by the morning, and it **(5) start out** as we got nearer Brighton. It was actually quite sunny when we arrived. Unfortunately it soon **(6) out of luck** over again, and by the afternoon it was pouring with rain. Yet again, we were **(7) out of luck**.

---

**Everyday topics** | **Page 78**
32 I can talk about sleep

A Morning, Kasha – did you sleep well?
B Yeah, I had a really good night, thanks – I fell asleep immediately. How about you?
A Awful – I didn’t sleep a wink. Well, that’s not entirely true. I eventually managed to drop off, but I spent most of the night tossing and turning.
B Yeah, I had a similar problem the night before last. I was wide awake for ages because I was worried sick about work.
A Yeah well, never mind. We’ll be back home tonight, so we can both have an early night and a lie-in tomorrow if we want.

Glossary

have a good/bad night
fall asleep
not sleep a wink
toss and turn
the night before last

wide awake
worried sick (about sth/sb)
have an early / a late night
have a lie-in

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
1 I was already wide wake before I had to get up this morning. wide awake
2 I sometimes drop out on long train journeys.
3 I didn’t wink a sleep last night.
4 I’ve had several later nights this week.
5 I never fall to sleep watching television.
6 I made a lie-in this morning.
7 If I don’t fall asleep quickly, I turn and toss for hours.
8 I had a very good sleep the night before the last.
9 I’m worry sick about my English.

2 Write the opposite using an idiom. More than one answer may be possible.
1 I slept all night.
2 I got up at the usual time.
3 I wasn’t worried at all.
4 I didn’t move all night.
5 I was fast asleep.
6 I managed to stay awake.
7 I slept badly.
8 I went to bed later than usual.

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 1 true for you? If not, change them so that they are true and write them in your notebook, or talk to another student.
1 I was already wide awake before I had to get up this morning. No. I was fast asleep.
33 I can talk about spending and saving

A Different kinds of spender

Chloe's very careful with money. She's not very well off, but she makes sure she's never in the red, so if she can't afford something, she just saves up for it. She pays off her credit card debt immediately, and when times are bad, she just cuts back on her spending.

The way he behaves, you'd think Luke was rolling in money, but he isn't. He finds it hard to make ends meet, he's often in debt, and he won't admit that he's hard up. Some of the time, he lives off his parents and I'm sure he never pays them back.

Glossary

- careful with (your) money: spending money only when it is necessary.
- well off: having a lot of money. Opp badly off.
- in the red: having spent more money than you have in the bank. Opp in the black. (See page 144.)
- save up (for sth): keep money so that you can use it later.
- cut back on sth: reduce the amount of sth that you spend, use, etc.
- rolling in money/it: INF having a lot of money.
- make ends meet: manage to buy the things you need with the money you have or earn.
- be in debt: owe money to sb.
- hard up: INF not having much money.
- live off sb: rely on sb else to provide you with food, money, etc.

spotlight Phrasal verbs with pay

- I paid off my debts. = finished paying the money I owed.
- She paid me back. = gave me the money that she had borrowed from me.
- I paid in £1000. = put £1000 into my bank account. Opp take out.

1 Correct the mistakes with the particles.

1 I'm afraid I'm at the red.
2 I cut back in my spending.
3 Pay out the money you borrowed.
4 He's been on debt for years.
5 How will he pay over his debts?
6 Go to the bank and pay the cheque on.
7 She's absolutely rolling on money.
8 You have to save out for it.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I take money of my account once a week.
2 I'm not very with money; I just spend whatever I have.
3 I find it very difficult to back on my spending.
4 Doctors live comfortably and are off, but nurses are off.
5 Most elderly people are quite up.
6 Young people live their parents till they are about 18.
7 People who are in money have to pay higher taxes.
8 Lawyers find it difficult to meet.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true about you and your country? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B  Money in adverts

Savings for a rainy day?

Pay for your electricity online and we’ll take 2% off.

How to get your money’s worth when hiring a builder: read our factsheet and it won’t cost you a penny.

Air travel: don’t get ripped off – come to webtravel.co.uk.

You’ve run up a debt and are worried about it?

We can help.

VISIT

SOUTH AFRICA on a shoestring!

Don’t run out of money abroad: take traveller’s cheques.

Our insurance will COVER THE COST OF dental work.

Students: keep your head above water!

Buy Student Finance Magazine.

Glossary

save for a rainy day:

save money for a time when you really need it.

rip sth off:

INF cheat sb by charging too much money for sth. rip-off N.

keep your head above water:

just manage to survive in a difficult situation, especially one in which you don’t have enough money.

make sth cheaper by a certain amount.

If you run up a debt or bill, you owe sb a lot of money.

use all of sth and have no more left.

get the full value of the money you have spent.

no money at all. (It didn’t/won’t cost a penny.)

INF using very little money.

provide enough money to pay for sth.

4 Correct one wrong letter in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

▶ If you’re lucky, they’ll make 10 per cent off your bill. take
1. Are you able to cover the post of the transport yourself?
2. The concert was disappointing; I didn’t feel I’d got my money’s worth.
3. Be careful; you don’t want to rub up a huge bill for the wedding.
4. The taxi driver knew we weren’t locals, and we got nipped off.
5. It’s not always easy to keep your head above water when you’re a student.
6. We ran out on money and had to go to the cash machine at the bank.
7. Mum said it would be expensive, but it didn’t cost a jenny.
8. I’ve always believed you should save for a rainy way.

5 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ The shopkeeper made it cheaper by €20. OFF the shopkeeper took €20 off.
1. He runs the café with little money. SHOESTRING
2. I didn’t expect him to cheat me like that. RIP
3. Keep your money till you really need it. RAINY
4. It’s hard to survive with the money I’ve got. WATER
5. It was absolutely free. PENNY
6. The insurance paid for the hospital. COST
7. Did you get good value for money? WORTH
8. I haven’t got any dollars left. RUN
A Going on a diet

NAME  Jo Jones
CURRENT WEIGHT  90 kg
TARGET WEIGHT  60 kg

Hi, I'm going on a diet – starting tomorrow! I'm worried that if I see a packet of biscuits, I'll just give in and eat one after another. Please help.

[blond23]  Hi Jo, if I were you, I'd just cut down on everything sugary. And whatever you do, don't go without breakfast – it's the most important meal of the day. Remember to do some exercise to burn up the calories. Good luck!

[Kima]  Jo, make sure you eat lots of fruit, vegetables, and brown rice; fill yourself up with them before you eat anything else. The rule is, if you're starving, eat fruit! All the best!

Glossary

go/be on a diet  try to get thinner by eating a limited range of food.
give in (to sth)  If you give in to sth, you can't say 'no' to sth you want. first one, then the next, etc. SYM one after the other.
cut down (on sth)  reduce the amount of sth that you eat, use, etc., or do sth less often.
go without sth  live without sth that you need or would like to have.
burn sth up  use up energy in your body by being physically active.
fill yourself up (with sth)  eat enough food so you no longer feel hungry.
be starving  INF be extremely hungry.

spotlight Giving advice

You can use these phrases when you are giving advice:
If I were you, I'd cut down on bread. = in your situation, I would ...
Whatever you do, avoid cheese. used with a warning to sb not to do sth.
Make sure you drink plenty of water. = take the action necessary.

1  Complete the sentences with words from the box. (There are more words than you need.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>another</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>burn</th>
<th>other</th>
<th>cut</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>starving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>He ate them one after</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Don't give</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What's for dinner? I'm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>You need to burn up the calories.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>He just fills himself with cakes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Try and burn sth up without sugary drinks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Have you go down on hamburgers?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Why don't you go in on a diet?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2  Circle the correct word. (You will complete the sentences in Exercise 3.)

| 1  | If you want to go in | on a diet, try to eat                                      |
| 2  | If I were | am you, I wouldn't | won't eat                                                  |
| 3  | Whatever | Wherever you do, don't forget to                           |
| 4  | Make | Get sure you take                                         |
| 5  | If you're starving | starving, don't fill | fit yourself up with                                       |
| 6  | Try to cut out | down on drinks like                                       |

3  ABOUT YOU  Complete the sentences in Exercise 2, giving advice to someone who wants to lose weight. If possible, discuss your answers with another student.
B Kitchen tips

All you need to know from kitchenhelp.com

- Freeze an onion before you **chop it up**: that way, you won't cry.
- Fish smells can stay on pots and pans used in cooking. If you have a pan that smells, put some tea in it, **turn up** the heat till it boils, then **throw it out**. That will **get rid of** the smell.
- Garlic skins **come off** easily if you warm them before peeling. Or put the garlic under a flat knife and hit it with your hand: the skin opens and you can **get** the garlic **out** easily.
- You can **make use of** leftover cold rice by **heating it up** in the microwave with a little water. Then add it to a soup: it's a great way to **turn** leftovers **into** something new.

**Glossary**

- **chop sth up**: cut sth into small pieces.
- **turn sth up**: increase the heat or sound of sth. OPP **turn sth down**.
- **throw sth out**: put sth that you do not want in the dustbin, down the sink, etc.
- **come off**: If sth will **come off**, you can remove it.
- **get sth out (of sth)**: take sth from inside the place where it normally is.
- **make use of sth**: use sth for a particular purpose.
- **heat sth up**: make sth become warm or hot. (cool down = become cool, e.g. Let the vegetables **cool down** before you eat them.)
- **turn sth into sth**: make sth become sth different.

**spotlight get rid of sth/sb**

If you **get rid of sth/sb**, you take action in order to be free of it/them. 
*Open the door to get rid of the smell.* = so that the smell will go away.
*Let's get rid of this stale bread.* = throw it out.
*I got rid of the chef; he was terrible.* = made him leave.

4 Respond to the question in each dialogue using a word from the box in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get ✓</th>
<th>throw</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>heat</th>
<th>rid</th>
<th>turn</th>
<th>use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Did you tell that terrible waiter to leave? ~ Yes, I **get rid of him**.
2. Was the oven temperature too low? ~ Yes, I had to **turn** it up.
3. The dish wasn't very warm, was it? ~ No, I had to **heat** it.
4. Can you remove the mark from the saucepan? Yes, it'll **come off** easily.
5. Did you throw that coffee out? ~ Yes, I got rid of it.
6. What did you do with all those eggs? ~ I managed to **throw** them into the bin; I made a cake.
7. Did you put that awful cake in the bin? ~ Yes, I **put** it away.

5 Rewrite the sentences in the correct order, adding one more word.

1. **up** | **I** | so | was | the | **food** | **cold** | it | **the food was cold**, so I **heated it up**.
2. **pears** | **throw** | don't | those | please
3. **he** | **chop** | needs | the | to | **onions**
4. **down** | please | you | the | **oven** | could
5. **the** | turned | **I** | a | **tomatoes** | **soup**
6. **too** | let | **cool** | it's | **if** | **hot** | it
The Morning News

Thieves get away with antiques valued at €1m

The City Museum was the scene of a major crime last night when thieves tricked a security guard into believing they were a new team of cleaners.

Hold-up at city bank
Two armed men held up a city bank yesterday, holding the bank manager prisoner for an hour as they searched for cash. They then ran off with €100,000.

Break-in at Simpsons Hotel
Police searched in vain last night for two men who broke into Simpsons Hotel.

Glossary
- get away with sth: do sth bad and not be punished for it.
- trick sb into sth / doing sth: persuade sb to do sth by making them believe sth which is not true.
- hold up sth/sb: rob or try to rob a place or a person by threatening violence. hold-up N.
- in vain: without success.
- break in/into sth: enter a building by force, usually to steal sth. break-in N.
- catch sb red-handed: catch sb while they are committing a crime. (See page 144.)
- be on the lookout for sb/sth: get into a situation where you may be punished.
- get into trouble (with sb): increasing. SYN on the increase.
- let sb off: not punish sb, or punish them less than expected.
- beat sb up: attack sb by hitting or kicking them many times.
- behind bars: INF in prison.

spotlight Phrasal verbs and idioms with run
He ran off with my handbag. = stole it and left quickly.
She ran away from home. = left home secretly to escape from sb or sth.
The prisoner is on the run. = trying to hide or escape from the police.
1. Circle the correct particle.
   1. The police searched the area in | on vain for the suspects.
   2. Two young men are thought to be at | on the run after escaping from prison last night.
   3. His life started to go wrong after he ran away | off from home at the age of 16.
   4. The number of burglaries is in | on the rise in certain parts of the country.
   5. The thief tricked the old couple into | in giving him their bank details.
   6. I don't think that we will get away | around with telling lies for very long.
   7. The poor man was beaten out | up outside the pub.
   8. Police are in | on the lookout for two men in their twenties.

2. Write the last word in each sentence.
   1. I know the thieves escaped, but are they still on the ________?
   2. If they carry on behaving so anti-socially, they'll soon get into ________.
   3. Sadly, our efforts to find the person who stole the jewellery were in ________.
   4. Everyone at the bank was very shocked to hear about last night's break-
      ________.
   5. What do you think she was running away ________?
   6. The crime figures haven't fallen; on the contrary, they're on the ________.
   7. It was a silly mistake and the police caught him red-
      ________.
   8. The boys took his mobile phone, but at least they didn't beat him ________.

3. Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.
   - They threatened violence and stole from the bank. HOLD they held up the bank.
   1. Dan will be punished for this. TROUBLE
   2. He committed the crime but wasn't punished. AWAY
   3. The police are looking for two thieves. LOOKOUT
   4. The escaped murderer is now back in prison. BARS
   5. They caught the boy but did not punish him. LET
   6. She left home to escape from her father. RUN
   7. The barman was attacked by the gang. BEAT
   8. We looked for the ring without any success. VAIN

4. One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

   Minor crime is certainly ________ the increase in some villages; a few teenagers have been into trouble with the police. Residents have been the lookout for any bad behaviour. When one boy into the village shop at night, he was red-handed, but the police just let him with a severe warning. I don't think he should have been able to away with it. But last night two men tricked a resident letting them into his house; they then ran with some very valuable things, and they are still on run. I think that people like that should be bars.
A positive experience

ALAN When you started your apprenticeship, I didn’t think you’d get through it.

TOM No, neither did I. Working all hours for next to nothing was hard, and some of the time I wasn’t really sure I was up to it.

ALAN Yes, I remember old Wilson giving you a hard time when you got behind with work. But you wouldn’t have made it without him, would you?

TOM No, you’re right. He stood by me all those years, and I certainly have him to thank for the fact that I’m now fully qualified.

Glossary

got through sth manage to complete a difficult task or deal with a difficult situation.
all hours If you work all hours, you work most of the time or for long periods.
next to nothing almost nothing (in this case, almost no money).
be up to sth be skilled or strong enough physically or mentally to do sth.
give sb a hard time INF make a situation difficult for sb, often by making them work hard or by asking them lots of difficult questions.
get behind (with sth) not do sth on time, then have more to do later.
stand by sb support or be loyal to sb, even in a difficult situation.
have sb to thank (for sth) used when you are saying who is responsible for sth, usually for sth good.

spotlight make it

Make it is a common idiom and can be used in different situations:
He’ll never make it as a teacher. = be successful in a career (as above).
I can’t make it tomorrow. = be present at a particular time or place.

1 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

1 She got through it. P
2 He made next to nothing. N
3 I wasn’t up to it. N
4 He got behind. N
5 They stood by me. P
6 She made it as a doctor. P

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Can you it on Wednesday? ~ Yes, I’m free all day.
2 Did you finish the work? ~ Yeah, we eventually through it.
3 Is she a difficult boss? ~ Well, she’s given me quite a hard .
4 Did he it as an engineer? ~ He did, and he has his uncle to for that.
5 Has your boss helped you? ~ Yes, he’s always by me.
6 Why did Matthew leave? ~ He just wasn’t to the job, so they dismissed him.

3 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 The teacher thinks I’m lazy and she’s been giving me hard time.
2 That poor boy earns next nothing.
3 I’m sure she’ll make as a nurse; she’s very caring.
4 She’s started to behind with her work, and it’s affecting everyone.
5 I’m working hours at the moment; I never have a day off.
6 The picnic was great, and we have my brother thank for that.
A negative experience

After university, I was turned down by lots of companies before I was finally taken on by a firm selling farm machinery. I thought it was a nine-to-five job but I was wrong. I had to work all hours, and my boss was constantly checking up on me to make sure I was hard at it. To make matters worse, we were dealing with some difficult farmers. Once I realized that I wasn't cut out for the job, I decided to hand in my notice. But before I had a chance, they gave me the sack – they realized I was hopeless!

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>term</th>
<th>explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn sb down</td>
<td>say 'no' to sb when they apply for sth or offer sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb on</td>
<td>employ sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine-to-five</td>
<td>relating to normal and regular working hours (also as ADV: work nine to five).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check up on sb</td>
<td>watch sb to make sure they are doing their job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard at it</td>
<td>INF working hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to make matters/things worse</td>
<td>to make a bad situation even worse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with sb/sth</td>
<td>1 do business with sb (as above). 2 take the necessary action to resolve sth, e.g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be cut out for sth/to do sth</td>
<td>INF have the necessary qualities and ability for/to do sth (He's not cut out for teaching/to be a teacher).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand in your notice</td>
<td>formally tell your employer that you are leaving your job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb the sack</td>
<td>tell an employee that they can no longer work for you because of bad work, their behaviour, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Cross out the wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

1 It's basically a nine-for-five job. 4 We deal on lots of banks.
2 Why did they give him a sack? 5 I've been hard with it all day.
3 Is he checking up against you? 6 To make matters worst, I failed.

5 Agree with the first speaker's comment, but use a different idiom or phrasal verb.

- It's regular working hours, isn't it? ~ Yeah, it's a nine-to-five job.
  1 They rejected you! ~ Yes, they
  2 She's resigned, hasn't she? ~ Yes, she yesterday.
  3 They've employed more people. ~ Yes, they've two drivers.
  4 Have they dismissed her? ~ Yes, they last week.
  5 Has she been watching you at work? ~ Yes, she on me all the time.
  6 He didn't have the ability for that job. ~ No, he wasn't for it.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook or ask another student.

Have you ever...
... been turned down for anything?
... had a nine-to-five job?
... handed in your notice?
... had someone checking up on you?
... had to do something you weren't cut out for?
A Taking over a restaurant

Friends thought we were out of our minds when we took over the restaurant in the High Street. It had been a going concern at one time, but had changed hands three times in recent years, and on each occasion had gone out of business. Someone wanted to turn it into a baker's, but the deal fell through and we took it on. It needed money spent on it, and we had to take out a loan to bridge the gap, but we got the business up and running very quickly. We took on a very good chef, promoted the restaurant widely, and worked day and night to make a go of it. We still have a long way to go, but we're optimistic.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be out of your mind</td>
<td>INF be mad or crazy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth over</td>
<td>get control of sth or responsibility for sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a going concern</td>
<td>a business or activity that is making a profit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change hands</td>
<td>pass from one owner to another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out of business</td>
<td>stop operating as a business because there is no more money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn sth (from sth) into sth</td>
<td>make sth become sth different.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall through</td>
<td>fail or not happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take out sth</td>
<td>make a financial or legal arrangement with a company, bank, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bridge the gap</td>
<td>reduce the difference between two things (in this case between the money they have and the money they need). (of a business or system) working and being used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up and running</td>
<td>INF make sth successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a go of sth</td>
<td>need to make more progress before achieving sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a long way to go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight** take sth on, take sb on

If you take sth on, you decide to do it or be responsible for it. If you take sb on, you employ them.

1 Match 1–6 with a–f.

   1. bridge
   2. take over
   3. change
   4. take on
   5. go out of
   6. take out

   a. insurance
   b. hands
   c. a new employee
   d. the gap
   e. a company
   f. business

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

   The company is doing well, so we'll need to take / more staff. on
   1. We didn't have the money, so we had to take a loan.
   2. It's not easy to run a café, but they think they can make go of it.
   3. The shop is making money; they sold it as a concern.
   4. We're negotiating the deal now, but it could still fall.
   5. I decided to on the job because I wanted a new challenge.
   6. You must be out of your to lend money to Karl; he's very unreliable.
   7. We're doing quite well, but we still have a long to go.
   8. They soon got the business and running.
   9. It used to be a shoe shop, but it's been into a chemist's.
B Living off the land

Sam Wall had always wanted to opt out of the rat race, so when a small farm came up for sale, he handed in his notice at the bank, and moved his family to the countryside. He thought they could grow their own food and become self-sufficient. Sadly, Sam was living in a dream world. He didn’t have the skills for farming, and soon found himself cutting corners in order to make ends meet. It proved to be a vicious circle and things gradually went from bad to worse. Eventually he was forced to sell up and move back to the city.

Glossary

**opt out (of sth)**
choose not to do sth or take part in sth.

**the rat race**
a stressful way of life in which people compete for wealth and power.

**come up**
happen or appear.

**for sale**
being offered for sb to buy.

**hand/give in your notice**
formally tell your employer that you are leaving your job.

**be (living) in a dream world**
have ideas or hopes that are not practical.

**cut corners**
do sth in the easiest and cheapest way, usually badly.

**make ends meet**
manage to buy the things you need with the money you have or earn.

**a vicious circle**
a situation in which one problem causes another problem which then makes the first problem worse.

**go from bad to worse**
(of a bad situation) get even worse.

**sell up**
sell your home, business, etc., often when leaving the area.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. They tried to cut corners | edges.
2. She gave | handed in her notice.
3. He opted out of | away from the rat race.
4. It’s a violent | vicious circle.
5. I saw a house to | for sale.
6. We can make ends manage | meet.
7. I decided to sell up | off and move away.
8. It went from bad to worse | worst.

4 Complete the idioms.

1. hand in your
2. a vicious
3. make ends
4. the rat
5. go from bad to
6. be living in a dream

5 Complete the text.

My father always says I’m living in a (1) world. If I imagine I can just (2) out of the rat (3) whenever I want. The truth is, our situations are very different. He has responsibilities, so he can’t just hand in his (4) and (5); he has to consider the rest of the family. But I don’t need a job with lots of money to make (6) meet. If something came (7), like the chance to live on a boat for a year, I’d take it.
I can talk about shopping

Shopping and you

Have you ever tried to get your money back on something you bought?
Do you like to buy new things as soon as they go on sale?
Do you ever send off for things rather than buy them in shops?
Do you always shop around to get the best price for something?
Do you often buy goods which are on special offer?
When did you last splash out on something to wear? What did you buy?
When you last bought a present, did the shop wrap it up nicely for you for nothing?
Do your local shops often sell out of things, e.g. bread?

Glossary

get sth back
on sale
send off/away for sth rather than
shop around (for sth)
on (special) offer
splash out (on sth)
wrap sth up for nothing
sell out (of sth)

If you get your money back, the money you have paid is returned to you. available to be bought, especially in a shop.
order sth by post or on the Internet. instead of; in place of.
go to several shops before you decide what particular thing to buy.
for free; without any payment.
If a shop sells out of sth, it has no more of that particular thing left to sell.

1 Write sentences using words from each column.

| I didn’t get | off | back |
| They’ve sold | the gift | milk |
| I sent | on | on a new coat |
| She splashed | my money | for bargains |
| The wine is | out of | for a book |
| He wrapped | out | special offer |
| I always shop | for | up for me |
| I got the bike | around | nothing |

2 Replace the underlined words with another word or phrase with a similar meaning.

1 I don’t think I’ll be able to get a refund on the holiday.
2 We bought the medium size instead of the large one this time.
3 When will that computer game be available in the shops?
4 He spent a lot of money on presents for his nephews.
5 I saw some nice shoes in a catalogue so I ordered them by post.
6 Are the CDs cheaper this week?
7 Did you go to different shops for the wedding present?
8 I was amazed, but she provided the delivery service free.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page, or ask another student.
Unit 31

1 Replace the underlined words and phrases with idioms or phrasal verbs that have the same meaning. Write your answers in the spaces below, using the first words to help you.

It’s going to 1) become cloudy and, according to the weather forecast, 2) it is likely that it will rain before lunchtime. Fortunately, the rain will 3) gradually disappear in the afternoon, and then I think it may 4) become brighter. I’m afraid we may be 5) unlucky at the weekend; they say we’re going to have three days 6) running of wet weather, but things will 7) improve by the middle of next week. Let’s 8) be optimistic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cloud</th>
<th>out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>pick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brighten</td>
<td>look</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 32

1 Using all the words, form eight idioms from the word square.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wide</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>last</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>toss</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>a wink</td>
<td>a lie-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>worried</td>
<td>a log</td>
<td>awake</td>
<td>sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the night</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>asleep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 33

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Hi, Jen – how’s things?
   B Well, OK, but I’m worried about my financial situation. I’m a bit hard (1) ____________ at the moment and finding it hard to make (2) ____________ meet.
   A Oh, dear. Look, come and stay with me for a week or two – it won’t (3) ____________ you a penny.
   B That’s very kind, but I can’t come and (4) ____________ off you – that’s not fair.
   A Well, it’s up to you. But I could lend you some money – just (5) ____________ me back when you’re earning more.
   B I appreciate that, and I’ll think about it. But in the meantime, I’ll just have to (6) ____________ back on my spending.

2 A Where are you going for your holidays this year?
   B Well, I’m saving (7) ____________ for a fortnight in the Canary Islands in September. Hey, would you like to come?
   A That would be fantastic, but I really can’t afford it at the moment.
   B Well, I tell you what – if you can (8) ____________ the cost of your travel, I’ll pay for the accommodation.
   A Really? Brilliant! I’ll be really (9) ____________ with my money for the next few months.
Unit 34

1 Complete the text.

My favourite meal
Posted by Mad Matt on 3 January 2010

One dish I absolutely adore is roast duck, and I make it quite often. First, I (1) __________ up the oven to the maximum temperature. Then I put the duck in until the skin starts to go crisp. Meanwhile I (2) __________ up some vegetables such as carrots and potatoes into large chunks. After half an hour, I turn the oven (3) __________ and put the vegetables in as well (but not with the duck, because it is too fatty). I let them both cook for 45 minutes, then take the duck out and let it (4) __________ down slightly (I prefer it warm rather than hot). Then I serve it on top of the vegetables.

When you've eaten the duck, don't get (5) __________ of the bones. You can turn them (6) __________ a delicious soup just by adding vegetables, herbs, water, and seasoning, and cooking it very gently for two hours. You can also (7) __________ good use of the fat from the duck to fry potatoes, so don't throw that (8) __________ either.

One final piece of advice is not to serve roast duck if your dinner guests are (9) __________ a diet or trying to (10) __________ down on fattening food. They won't thank you for it!

Unit 35

1 Write sentences using words from each column.

| He won't get | up | with the police. |
| They broke | away | my wallet. |
| They beat him | on | a shop. |
| They caught | for | the run. |
| They're on the lookout | trouble | with the robbery. |
| The thief ran off | him | quite badly. |
| She could get into | into | red-handed. |
| The prisoner is still | with | the robbers. |

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

The boys escaped without being punished. In other words, they got away with it.

1 They threatened the cashier and demanded money. In other words, it was a
2 They did it without success. In other words, they did it in
3 The men will spend ten years in prison. In other words, they will spend ten years behind
4 They entered the building using force. In other words, there has been a
5 Crime is increasing. In other words, it's on
6 She left the house to escape from her parents. In other words, she ran
7 They didn't punish him for what he did. In other words, they
8 He could get into a situation where he will be punished. In other words, he could get
Unit 36

1 Cross out one wrong or unnecessary word in each line of the text.

My workplace difficulties

I haven’t been very successful in the workplace. In one job, I worked all long hours, and I had a difficult boss who was always checking it up on me; it made work very hard. She kept on telling me that she didn’t think I was up to for the job, and I felt that she never gave me any support at all. To make the matters worse, my other colleagues weren’t very kind, and they didn’t really stand up by me either.

Eventually, I decided that I’d had enough, and I handed them in my notice and started to look for another job. I was taken down on as a medical secretary, but it was harder than I’d thought, and I realized that I wasn’t really cut out for it.

And in fact, at the end of the first month, they gave to me the sack.

2 Write the last word in the sentence.
1 I wanted the job, but I didn’t have enough experience so they turned me
2 I don’t really like working nine to
3 I looked for another job because my boss was giving me a really hard
4 My success is really because of my parents: I have them to
5 My sister loves her job, but she earns next to
6 There’s a meeting tomorrow at 7.30 a.m. Do you think you can make?

Unit 37

1 You own a company. Are the following events good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 Workers hand in their notice. 5 You start cutting corners.
2 Your company is a going concern. 6 You take over another company.
3 A business deal falls through. 7 You make a go of it.
4 You take people on. 8 You are in a vicious circle.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1 He thinks I must be of my mind to work with my uncle.
2 They want to turn the shop a café.
3 She has taken a lot of responsibility in her new job.
4 The new business will be and running soon.
5 I believe the house is sale.
6 If an opportunity comes , I’m going to take it.

Unit 38

1 Complete the dialogues.

1 Did you have to pay for the repair? ~ No, they did it nothing.
2 Did you buy that in a shop? ~ No, I had to off for it.
3 Couldn’t you get any tickets for the match? ~ No, they’d completely out.
4 Did you buy that coat today? ~ Yes, it was on special.
5 Did you get a present for Magda? ~ Yes, could you up for me?
6 Are you taking that skirt back to the shop? ~ Yes, I want to my money back.
7 Why did you get the black necklace than the red one? ~ It goes with more things.
8 Do you always shop before you buy anything? ~ Yes, I like a bargain.
I can describe social activities

A  A good night out

... and after a hard week, I was hoping for an early night, but I ran into an old friend who was in town for the weekend, and he was keen for a night out. So, we popped in for a drink at 'The Blue Room', then went on to a seafood restaurant just round the corner. Seafood's not my cup of tea usually, but I quite enjoyed it. I offered to go halves, as I always do when I eat out with a friend, but Cal insisted on paying as I said I'd put him up for the night. We ended up in a bar until one, so it turned out to be quite a late night after all ...

Glossary

an early night
run into sb
a night out
pop in
(just) round the corner
not sb's cup of tea
go halves
eat out
put sb up
end up (somewhere or doing sth)
turn out (to be sth)

1 Complete the dialogues.
1 Is there a post office close _________? ~ Yeah, it's just _________ the corner.
2 Shall we _________ in and see Mandy? ~ Er, I think she might be busy.
3 I _________ into an old school friend yesterday. ~ Really? Who was that?
4 Were you expecting cold weather? ~ Yes, but it _________ out to be very warm.
5 Did you go to the beach? ~ No, we _________ up by the lake instead.
6 Did you have a nice day _________ yesterday? ~ Yes, we went for a walk in the country.
7 Have you been to the Jazz Café? ~ Yes, it's not really my cup of _________.
8 I've got nowhere to stay tonight. ~ Oh, that's OK, I can _________ you up.

2 Circle the correct answer. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)
1 How often do you have an early evening | night?
2 How often do you eat out | away?
3 Do you normally go half | halves when you go out with a friend?
4 Are there restaurants just round the bend | corner from your home?
5 How often do you put people up | in for the night?
6 When was the last time you had a night out | over?

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Not such a good night out

I didn’t feel like going out, but Malcolm talked me into it: a club in the square had recently changed hands and he thought we should try it out. It was already busy when we arrived and they were only letting people in one at a time, but Malcolm managed to jump the queue – something he’s very good at. Inside, we were packed in like sardines. As usual Malcolm pushed in to get a drink, but this time a barman took exception to his behaviour. Malcolm started to argue, which was asking for trouble, and in the end they threw us out. In future, I think I’ll keep away from that place – and from Malcolm!

Glossary

feel like (doing) sth
want (to do) sth.

talk sb into (doing) sth
persuade sb to do sth.

change hands
pass from one owner to another.

try sth/sb out
test sth or sb to see what they are like.

one at a time
separately; individually.

jump the queue
go ahead of other people who have been waiting longer. SYN push in.

packed in like sardines
crowded so closely together that there is no space to move.

take exception to sth
be angry about sth and object to it strongly.

be asking for trouble
INF be doing sth that will probably cause problems.

throw sb out
force sb to leave a place. SYN chuck sb out INF.

keep away from sb/sth
avoid going near sb/sth.

4 Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. They let us in one at a time.
2. We were making too much noise and they threw us out.
3. She didn’t want to go but I talked her up to it.
4. The Tube was very busy and we were packed in like sardines.
5. Why did she make an exception to your clothes?
6. I was in a hurry, so I tried to push in.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. Do you feel like going out tonight?
2. They threw us out of the club because we weren’t members.
3. Sarah had a terrible time yesterday, so don’t mention it; that’s for trouble.
4. It makes me very angry when people try to jump the queue.
5. I would go away from that part of town if I were you; it’s quite dangerous.
6. Amy’s got a new hairdresser; I thought I’d try him to see if he’s any good.
7. I didn’t want to go, but she talked me it.
8. It used to be an awful place, but it changed last year, and has really improved.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1. Do people often talk you into doing things? If so, what kind of thing?
2. Have you ever seen someone being thrown out of a place? If so, where?
3. Has a place near you recently changed hands? If so, what?
4. Do you ever jump the queue? Do you get angry when others push in?
5. Are there any parts of your city that tourists should keep away from?
6. What do you feel like doing this evening?
40 I can describe outdoor activities

A A walk in the country

I can't keep up with Josh - I just get out of breath - so when he suggested going for a walk, I only agreed to go if we could take my sister Michelle along as well, knowing she would slow us down. Anyway, we set off, and sure enough, after about ten minutes, Michelle started falling behind, and Josh was shouting at her, 'Come on! Get a move on! You're holding us up!' She tried to run after us and catch us up, but eventually she shouted that she'd had enough of Josh's military march, and all of a sudden she turned round and headed home. I was quietly pleased.

Glossary

keep up (with sb) move at the same speed as sb else.
out of breath breathing fast and with difficulty.
slow sb down make sb go/walk more slowly.
sure enough used to say that sth happened as expected.
fall behind (sb/sth) move more slowly than other people you are with.
get a move on INF = hurry up.
hold sb/sth up cause a delay or make sb/sth late.
run after sb/sth run to try to catch sb/sth.
catch sb up / catch up with sb reach sb who is ahead of you by going faster.
have had enough of sth used when sth is tiring or annoying you, and you want it to stop (I've had enough of this terrible weather!).
all of a sudden quickly and unexpectedly.
turn round/around change direction and face the other way.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 This weather's awful. I've had ___________.
2 We ran to catch ___________.
3 Sorry I'm late; I was held ___________.
4 I heard a shout, so I turned ___________.
5 He got slower and slower and fell ___________.
6 I was slowed ___________.
7 He ran ___________.
8 He shouted at us to get ___________.

a round and then I saw the man fall.
b a move on.
c enough of it.
d up with the others.
e behind the rest of the runners.
f up in traffic for an hour.
g after the man who had stolen his briefcase.
h down by the strong winds.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A Where's Alex?
   B Well, he hurt his ankle and that held us ___________ for a while. In the end, Leslie and I walked on and Alex started to ___________ behind. I haven't seen him for two hours.

2 A What happened?
   B Well, I was playing football in the garden with some friends, including my brother, Chris, who's a bit of an idiot, and all of a ___________ there was a loud crash. I ___________ around and someone had kicked the ball through the kitchen window. ___________ enough, it was Chris.

3 A How are your swimming lessons going?
   B Well, I'm getting better, but I'm still out of ___________ after only 50 metres. My teacher's trying to slow me ___________, but I want to ___________ up with the rest of the class.
B Swimming

I love swimming – your stories

I look forward to the evenings when I can go down to the river and have a swim. It’s really helped me get into shape.

Swimming didn’t come easy to me; I had to work at it. But it’s just a question of practice, and little by little I’m getting better, which is great.

I adore swimming – it just comes naturally to me. I took it up seriously after my accident and it’s done me a lot of good.

Last year I decided to go in for a two-kilometre charity swim. It was great exercise and it helped to know it was for a good cause.

Glossary

look forward to (doing) sth  be thinking with pleasure about sth that is going to happen, or sth that you are going to do.
not come easy/easily (to sb)  be difficult for sb to do.
work at sth  make an effort over a period of time to do sth well.
be a question of (doing) sth  If sth is a question of practice, luck, etc., that is all you need for it to happen.
SYN be a matter of (doing) sth.
little by little  slowly, gradually. SYN bit by bit.
come naturally (to sb/sth)  be natural and easy for sb to do.
take sth up  start or learn to do sth, especially for pleasure.
do sb good  have a helpful or useful effect on sb.
go in for sth  take part in a competition or take an exam.
be for/in a good cause  be a good thing to do because it helps others.

spotlight shape

If you get into shape, you become physically fitter as a result of taking exercise and eating healthy food.

If you are in good shape, you are physically fit; if you are out of shape you are not fit.

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you do something in a good cause, it means it will help you | other people.
2 If something doesn’t come easily, it means it’s hard to learn | you can’t find it.
3 If you plan to get into shape, it means that at the moment you’re in shape | out of shape.
4 If you do something bit by bit, it means you do it less and less | little by little.
5 If you go in for a race, it means you enter the race | win the race.
6 If you take up a sport, it means you enjoy it | start doing it.

4 Complete the texts.

My sister’s an amazing tango dancer. She (1) __________ it up when she was very young, and at first it didn’t (2) __________ easy to her. However, bit (3) __________ bit she became more confident, and now she’s the local champion. She’s going in (4) __________ a national competition next month, and I’m really (5) __________ forward to seeing her perform.

It’s strange, but my twin and I are quite different when it comes to sport. Everything (6) __________ naturally to Charlie, and as a result he’s in good (7) __________ . But I’m a bit overweight, and for me it’s really a (8) __________ of having to work (9) __________ any sport I try. It helps if I feel it’s doing me (10) __________ , I suppose, but I’d rather sit and watch him.

5 ABOUT YOU What is your swimming story? Write it in your notebook, using vocabulary from the page. If possible discuss with another student.
A touring holiday

Holidays in Britain

JOE SMITH: We try to **get away** in winter and go somewhere warm, but this year we decided to stay in England; and it **turned out to be** a great success. We didn’t plan anything **in advance** – we just **set out** in the car, **took our time**, and **stopped off** whenever we found somewhere nice. After ten days we’d been **all over the place**. **Getting around** was so easy with few tourists about, and, it being **out of season**, we never had a problem finding a hotel. In fact, I **got more out of** this holiday than one where I just sit on a beach.

**Glossary**

- **turn out (to be)** happen in a particular way that is often unexpected.
- **in advance (of sth)** before sth happens or is expected.
- **set out** leave a place and start a journey. **SYN set off.**
- **take your time** do sth without hurrying.
- **stop off** make a short visit somewhere during a longer trip.
- **all over the place** in or through all parts of a place; everywhere.
- **get around** move from one place to another. **SYN get about.**
- **out of season** at the time of year when few people go on holiday.
- **get sth out of sth** get pleasure or benefit from sth. (It can also be used in a negative sense, e.g. I didn’t get much out of the course.)

1. Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

   1. We’ll stop **of | off** for a night on the way.
   2. The hotel turned up **out | off** to be very nice.
   3. They set **out | off** while it was still dark.
   4. It was easy to get **around | about**.
   5. He got **away | out** from the police.
   6. I can’t leave **get away from** work now.

2. One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

   1. I like to go to the coast **out of season**, when it’s quiet. **of**
   2. There’s no hurry – take **time**.
   3. We set after breakfast so that we would get there in **time**.
   4. I don’t have long holidays, but I like to get at least once a **year**.
   5. We expected lots of tourists, but it turned to be very quiet.
   6. It was a very educational holiday, and I got a lot of it.
   7. During the time I was there, I travelled all the **place**.

3. Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 4.)

   1. Do you usually get **more** than once a year?
   2. Do you often take holidays **out of** when it’s quieter?
   3. Do you usually book your holiday **in advance**?
   4. When you’re on holiday, how do you usually **get around**?
   5. Do you often stop **for** a night on your way to a place?

4. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B  A riding and camping holiday

Last year I went away on my own, so this year I thought it would make a change to go with a group. I chose a camping and riding holiday in France with four other people. I'm not very good at roughing it, and although I'd ridden once or twice before, I'd never spent a week on horseback. But I thought, 'Why not?' As it happened, the camping was very enjoyable. Everyone did their bit with the cooking, and riding's a great way to see the countryside. You get off the beaten track so easily, and it's lovely being out in the open air. It did me good, and I'd certainly go again.

Glossary

| go away     | have a holiday. |
| make a change | used to say that an activity is enjoyable because it is different from what you usually do. |
| rough it    | INFL live with only basic shelter and necessities for a short time. |
| once or twice | a few times. |
| on horseback | riding on a horse. |
| as it happens/happened | used when you comment on sth that is unexpected, or sth connected with what sb else has just said. |
| do your bit | do an equal amount of a task or job as others. |
| off the beaten track | far away from buildings and other people. |
| in the open air | (used in a positive sense) outside; not in a building. |
| do sb good | have a useful and positive effect on sb. |

5 Circle the correct answer.
1 If you do your bit, it means you do an equal amount | a bit of a task that others are doing too.
2 If a place is off the beaten track, it is near | not near where people live.
3 If you rough it, you sleep somewhere like in a tent | in an expensive hotel.
4 If something makes a change, it means you change something | it is different from usual.
5 If something does you good, it means you like it | it has a positive effect on you.
6 If you like being in the open air, you are happy | unhappy to be outside.

6 Complete the text. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

I invited my cousin to go on holiday because I thought it would (1) ______________ her good to (2) ______________ away somewhere nice for a couple of weeks. It would also make a (3) ______________ for me to go away with someone else. She was delighted, but she really wanted to go somewhere where we'd be off the beaten (4) ______________, and out in the open (5) ______________ most of the time. As it (6) ______________, I was thinking exactly the same thing. I'd been to west Wales (7) ______________ or twice before, and I'd already made enquiries about renting a cottage on the coast.

7 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 8.)
1 Are you happy to go on holiday on your own?
2 Do you like going off the track when you're on holiday?
3 Do you really enjoy being out in the air?
4 Do you like roughing when you go on holiday?
5 Have you ever spent much time horseback?
6 Do you feel holidays you good, or do you find them tiring?

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A football match

Brampton were at full strength for their last home match, which kicked off at the earlier time of 2.30 p.m. Despite losing the toss and playing against the wind in the first half, Camborne United got off to a better start. They scored after ten minutes and were on top for most of the first half. Then, ten minutes into the second half, a United player was sent off for a terrible foul on the goalkeeper. Brampton took advantage of the extra man and scored an equalizer, and came close to adding the winner on several occasions. But despite being cheered on by a fanatical home crowd, Brampton had to settle for a draw.

'he toss' / 'toss a coin'

Glossary

at full strength
kick off
lose the toss
get off to a good/better/bad start
on top
send sb off
take advantage of sth
come close to sth / to doing sth
cheer sb on
settle for sth

playing with all the best members of your team. OPP below strength. (of a football or rugby match) start. kick-off N.
guess wrongly which side of a coin will face upwards when it lands on the ground (see picture). OPP win the toss.
start sth well/better/badly.
in control or leading others (in this case being the stronger team).
order a player who has broken a rule to leave the field and not return.
make a good use of an opportunity.
almost do sth.
shout in order to encourage sb in a game, race, etc.
accept sth that is not as good as you wanted.

1 Combine the words and phrases to make six idioms or phrasal verbs.

kick win take cheer at full send advantage of something off somebody on somebody off the toss strength

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Do you think we can win? ~ I doubt it. I'd settle for a draw.

2 Are we playing our best team? ~ No, we're not at full strength.

3 What time does the match start? ~ Three o'clock.

4 Did we come off to a great start for me because it took off half an hour late, and by then I was freezing. My boyfriend, who was captain, then settled for kicking one of their players, and the other team really took off from that. In the end, they beat us 5–0. My boyfriend was not happy!
International footballers teach on the field and in the classroom

At a time when many pupils have had enough of languages, one class of students is full of enthusiasm. Why? The answer may be something to do with their teacher — French international footballer Bacary Sagna. The Arsenal right-back is taking part in a project to liven up language teaching. To begin with, pupils spend 45 minutes with Sagna in the classroom learning French, and in return they have 45 minutes trying to get the better of him on the football field. And after six weeks, the pupils play on Arsenal's ground in a game refereed in French. The idea is catching on fast: 74 schools have now signed up to the scheme, and teachers believe it's making a big difference.

Glossary

- have had enough of sth: used when sth/sb is tiring or annoying you, and you no longer want to do it.
- be/have sth to do with sth/sb: be connected with sth/sb.
- take part (in sth): participate; join with other people in an activity. OPP take no part in sth.
- liven sth up: make sth more interesting and exciting.
- to begin with: first; at first. SYN to start with.
- in return (for sth): in exchange for sth or as payment for sth.
- get the better of sb/sth: defeat or be stronger than sb/sth.
- catch on: INF become popular or fashionable.
- sign up (for/to/with sth): agree formally to take part in sth.
- make a difference (to sth/sth): have an effect (on sth/sth). OPP make no difference / not make any difference.

4 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- Ray Clements is something a do with the national team. to
- I'm not going to any more lessons: I've had of English.
- We played well, but they the better of us in the end.
- Mariko teaches me Japanese, and I teach her English.
- They have both signed for the evening course in Italian.
- She was injured so she no part in the race.
- A few new students may help to liven the lessons.
- I can't play today: begin with, I haven't got my boots with me.
- Rock-ball is an interesting new sport, but do you think it will catch?

5 Replace the underlined part of each sentence with an idiom or phrasal verb from above.

- Over 1000 people want to participate in the race.
- They changed the rules to make things more exciting.
- This new sport could become fashionable.
- His job is connected with sports education.
- He changed the team but it didn't have any effect.
- At first we didn't speak very much.
A Driving long distances

When I have to drive long distances, I usually:
- fill the car up with petrol the day before I travel.
- load up the car the night before if necessary.
- set off early to avoid rush-hour traffic.
- stick to motorways if I can, in order to get from A to B as quickly as possible.
- only break my journey for 10–15 minutes at a time.
- look out for any short cuts when I’m on minor roads.
- take a map just in case I get lost.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fill sth up (with sth)</th>
<th>make sth completely full (with sth) (also just fill up = fill the car with petrol).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>load (sth) up</td>
<td>put a large quantity of things or people onto or into sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set off</td>
<td>start a journey (especially a long journey). SYN set out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick to sth</td>
<td>continue doing or using sth and not change it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get from A to B</td>
<td>go from one place to another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break your journey at a time</td>
<td>stop for a short time during a journey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look out for sth/sb</td>
<td>keep a watch for sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a short cut (just in case)</td>
<td>a quicker way to get somewhere (you take a short cut).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>because of the possibility of sth happening.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Make six sentences using words from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We set up somewhere to eat</th>
<th>I loaded to short cut</th>
<th>I usually stick a journey</th>
<th>Let’s break off the car</th>
<th>We can take out for main roads</th>
<th>Please look the early</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences.

1. We’ll have to _fill the car up_ with petrol before we get on the motorway.
2. I took some sandwiches just in _case_ I got hungry.
3. We can go along the main road, or take a _short cut_ through the park.
4. I never drive for more than two hours at a _time_ before I take a break.
5. My parents _break their journey_ off after breakfast, so they should be here by lunch.
6. We need to start looking _out for_ road signs to the town centre.
7. I usually _set off_ the car early to the inside lane of the motorway.
8. If the weather’s really bad, I usually _break my journey_ to the inside lane of the motorway.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Do you do these things when you drive long distances? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Problems on the roads

The cars started to **slow down** in front of us, and eventually everything **ground to a halt**.

The police **went after** him because he **jumped the lights**.

We **broke down in the middle of nowhere**, and had to **call out** the emergency services.

The driver **pulled out** without looking, and nearly **knocked** someone **over**.

The car was beginning to **speed up**, so it didn't **stand a chance of** stopping in time.

The taxi started to **pull in**, then suddenly it **drove off** again. I was furious.

---

**Glossary**

slow down: go more slowly. OPP **speed up**.

grind to a halt: **break down**

break down: (of a car, bus, etc.) stop working.

in the middle of nowhere: a long way from towns or buildings.

call sb out: phone for sb, e.g. a doctor or a plumber, to come and help you.

stand a chance of (sth / of doing sth): run after or chase sb in order to catch them.

go after sb: drive through a red traffic light without stopping.

jump the lights: (of a car or driver) move away from the side of the road or a queue of cars and into the traffic. OPP **pull in / pull over** move to the side of the road and stop.

pull out: hit sb and make them fall to the ground.

knock sb over/down: (of a car or driver) leave; start moving away.

---

4 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. It was an emergency so we had to **ask** | **call** out the fire brigade.

2. He was driving so fast, the cyclist didn’t **hold** | **stand** a chance.

3. Finally the traffic ground to a **halt** | **standstill**.

4. Why did the police **go** | **get after** him?

5. I **broke down** in the **centre** | **middle** of nowhere.

6. It’s illegal to **jump** | **rush** the lights.

5 Finish each sentence with the correct particle.

1. Why did the car **break**? 4. The lights were red, so I slowed

2. He just knocked me 5. We slowly **began to speed**

3. She got in the car and drove 6. I saw Paul by the road, so I pulled

6 Complete the text.

It all happened very fast. A red car in front of me hit another driver’s wing mirror, but drove (1) **without stopping** and (2) **jump the lights**. Then, in my rear view mirror, I saw a police car (3) **knock sb over/down** out from behind me and go (4) **knock sb over/down** it. The guy in the red car was driving like a madman. A van coming in the opposite direction tried to pull (5) **pull in / pull over** to avoid the red car, but it didn’t (6) **stand a chance of**. The red car crashed into the van, then (7) **over a cyclist waiting at** the junction.

7 ABOUT YOU Have you seen or experienced any of the problems on the road at the top of the page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Review: Out and about

Unit 39

1 One word is missing in each line of dialogue. What is it, and where does it go?
   A How was your out last Saturday?  
   B Well, I had a cold so I didn’t really feel going out, but Connie talked into it, and we went for a meal at the pizza place just the corner from home.  
   B Oh, is it good? I was thinking of it out.  
   A The food was OK, but we were packed like sardines.  
   B Yeah, the thing is, if you eat on a Saturday night, you’re asking trouble – it’s always busy.  
   A Yeah. Anyway, we bumped Susie when we were leaving and ended back at her flat. I didn’t get home till 2.00, so I had a pretty late after all.

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must stay the same as in the sentence on the left.
   Shall we eat?  
   The owner threw.
   That music isn’t.
   Shall we go?  
   That shop has changed.
   He took.
   I would keep.

Unit 40

1 Complete the dialogues.
   1 Are you going to watch the swimming? ~ Yes, of course. I’m looking to it.
   2 Do you find ball games difficult? ~ Yes, they don’t easy to me.
   3 Do you enjoy riding? ~ Yes, and I think it’s doing me a lot of .
   4 Are the two boys fit? ~ Yes, they’re both in good .
   5 Come on. Get a on. ~ I’m sorry, I can’t go any faster.
   6 He ran the boys who stole the bag. ~ Really. Did he catch them?
   7 When did you start getting of breath? ~ It just happened all of a .
   8 Are you going to stop for a rest? ~ Yes, you go on. I’ll up with you later.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.
   Tell the children to get a move . We’re going to be late! on
   1 I asked him to slow because I couldn’t walk that fast.
   2 I’m not very fit, so I soon fell the others.
   3 She was holding everyone so they went on without her.
   4 He suddenly turned and walked in the opposite direction.
   5 Golf doesn’t come naturally to me; I have to work it.
   6 I’ve decided to go in that competition.
   7 She took swimming to get into shape.
   8 Louis was going so fast that I couldn’t keep with him.
Unit 41

1 Complete the texts with words from the box.

away  good  season  happens  get  advance  around  beaten  air  rough

**Holidays**

**Start a conversation**

**CRAZY CAT** Hi, I'm hoping to (1) ______ away for a month travelling in Europe this summer, but I haven't got much to spend. At the same time, I don't want to (2) ______ it too much. Any suggestions?

**ERIN** Hi, Crazy. First thing is to book your flight a long time in (3) ______; that will save you loads of money. And if you can travel out of (4) ______, do so – it's much cheaper in June than August. As it (5) ______ I'm free in June and hoping to travel in Europe. Would you like a travelling companion? Let me know!

**LEROY** How about a camping trip? Camp sites these days are really comfortable. That way, the accommodation is cheap, and you'll be in the open (6) ______, which will do you (7) ______. If you manage to get off the (8) ______ track, you'll find more bargains in the quiet places – AND you'll get (9) ______ from all those other tourists! Use public transport to get (10) ______ – you know it makes sense. Have a great time.

Unit 42

1 Finish each sentence.

1 At the beginning of a game, you use a coin to find out which team wins the ______.
2 If a player has to leave the field for breaking a rule, they have been ______.
3 If you shout to encourage your team, you are ______ them.
4 If you have all your best players playing, you are at full ______.
5 If you don't join in with something, you take ______ in it.
6 If something catches on, it becomes ______.

2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

1 It has had an effect. It has made ______.
2 Anyone can participate. Anyone can take ______.
3 His job is connected with sport. His job is something to ______.
4 We almost won. We came ______.
5 I'm tired of training. I've had ______.
6 It will make it more interesting. It will liven ______.
7 I've enrolled for an English course. I've signed ______.
8 We started very well. We got ______.
1 Complete the advice sheet.

Top Tips for New Drivers

- Slow (1) __________! Many new drivers go too fast. Remember, if you're
driving slowly you (2) __________ a better chance of avoiding an accident if
anything unexpected happens.

- Remember to check your seat belt, mirror, etc. before you pull (3) __________
from the side of the road into traffic.

- Don't drive if you're feeling sleepy. If necessary, (4) __________ your journey
and have a coffee.

- Be prepared for anything on long journeys if you're alone. Make sure you
(5) __________ the car up with petrol, and take a mobile phone with you,
just in (6) __________ you break (7) __________ in the middle of
(8) __________.

- Also, on long journeys, check the oil and tyre pressure before you set
(9) __________.

- If your mobile rings, don't answer it. Wait until it is safe to (10) __________ in
to the side of the road and then answer the call.

2 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>JUMP</th>
<th>THE</th>
<th>SOMETHING→UP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHORT</td>
<td>CUT</td>
<td>LIGHTS</td>
<td>LOAD PULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPEED</td>
<td>GRIND</td>
<td>TO A OVER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UP</td>
<td>NOWHERE GO HALT OUT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>OF AFTER CALL SOMEONE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE</td>
<td>MIDDLE SOMEONE DRIVE OFF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Put a lot of things or people on to something, in a car, etc. _load something up_

1 start moving away in a car
2 drive through a red light without stopping
3 a long way from any building or houses

4 phone for a plumber, doctor, etc. to come and help you
5 go more quickly
6 run or chase after something to try to catch them
7 slow stop completely
8 move to the side of the road to stop
9 a quicker way to get somewhere
Tell us about you!
I could do with some new clothes.
I know I could work harder if need be.
I couldn't do without my mobile.
I don't usually feel like going out in the evenings.
I'm dying to get my own flat.
I sometimes set my heart on things I know I can't have.
I could make do with a smaller car, but I'd rather not.
I couldn't care less about money.
I believe you can't always pick and choose in life.

Glossary

could do with sth
if need be
do without sth/sb
feel like sth / doing sth
be dying to do sth / for sth
set your heart on sth
make do (with sth)
couldn't care less
pick and choose

INF used to say that you need or want to have sth.
if necessary.
manage or survive without sth/sb.
want sth or want to do sth (usually used about everyday things, e.g. I feel like a drink / going out).
INF want to do sth or want sth very much.
want sth very much (usually used about a possession, e.g. a gold ring, or a long-term goal, e.g. becoming a doctor).
manage with sth that isn't really good enough.
INF used to say, often rudely, that you don't think sth/sb is important or worth worrying about. SYN don't give a damn INF.
choose only the things you like and want.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
1 I could go and collect them from the station if the need be.
2 Their daughter has put her heart on having her own horse.
3 Do you feel like go out this evening?
4 He'll have to take any job he can get; he can't pick and select.
5 Now they have a baby, they can do with a bigger flat.
6 I'm dying for to have something to eat.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.
> Football isn't important to me. CARE I couldn't care less about football.
1 I want a rest now. FEEL
2 I really need a good dictionary. COULD
3 Can you manage with this small map? MAKE
4 You can't always have what you want. PICK
5 I really want to see his new girlfriend. DYING
6 I must always have my address book with me. DO
7 We can take the car if necessary, NEED
8 She desperately wants a career in music. HEART

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? If not, change them so they are true.
> I could do with some new clothes. a new tennis racket
Is the wedding **going ahead** as planned?
No, they've **put it off** until the spring.

I've got something **on** this Friday, so I'll have to **call off** our meeting.
That's OK - Bob can't **make it** either.
Shall we **fix something up** for next week?

They've **brought** the game **forward** to Saturday.
Yes, but they've **put the kick-off back** to five o'clock. It's really **messed up** my plans.

You're not **looking ahead** to next year already, are you?
Yes, I'm hoping to go to India, if all **goes according to plan**.

---

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go ahead</td>
<td>If sth <strong>goes ahead</strong>, it happens or proceeds (also <strong>go ahead with sth</strong>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring sth forward</td>
<td>move sth to an earlier time. OPP <strong>put sth back</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| mess sth up       | 1 spoil sth or have a bad effect on sth (as above). 2 do sth badly, e.g. I **messed up** the exam. SYN **muck** sth up
| have (got) sth on | INF have an arrangement to do sth.                                        |
| call sth off      | cancel sth that has been arranged, so it doesn't happen.                  |
| make it           | manage to do sth or be somewhere.                                        |
| fix sth up        | arrange for sth to happen.                                               |
| look ahead (to sth)| think about what is going to happen in the future.                       |
| go according to plan | happen in the way you intend and expect.                                    |

---

**1. Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.**

1. The exam has been **put back** | **put off** till Thursday.
2. I'm fairly sure the festival will **go ahead** | **look ahead** as planned.
3. The game has been **called off** | **put off** until next Wednesday.
4. Shall we **fix up** | **mess up** a meeting for Friday week?
5. Mike and Angela have split up, so they've **called off** | **put back** the wedding.
6. Changing the dates has really **messed up** | **mucked up** my plans.

---

**2. Complete the dialogues.**

1. They want to go **with** the meeting. ~ Oh, that’ll really **muck** **my plans**.
2. Where will you be next week? ~ In Peru, if everything goes **ahead** to plan.
3. Six o'clock is a bit early for dinner! ~ Yes, that’s why they’ve **put it back** till eight.
4. She thinks about the past too much. ~ Yes, she should be **ahead** to the future.
5. Have you written your essay yet? ~ No, I keep **putting it on** Saturday. ~ OK, let’s **put the party forward** to Friday.
6. Have you rung Gill? ~ Yes, we’re going to try and **fix** something up for the weekend.
7. Have you got anything **tonight**? ~ No, the game’s been **called**.

---

108 Concepts
My personal tastes

I used to be mad about chips, but I've completely gone off them now.

I've always had a sweet tooth.

My dad's really into camping, but it's not my thing.

I couldn't bear classical music as a teenager, but it grows on you.

Most clubs and bars are too loud for my liking.

My life revolves around my family.

I don't understand people who just live for their work.

Glossary

mad about sth/sb  INF liking sth/sb very much.
go off sth  INF stop liking sth that you liked in the past.
have a sweet tooth  INF like food that contains a lot of sugar.
be (really) into sth  INF be very interested in sth, especially as a hobby.
not sb's thing  INF not what sb likes or is interested in. SYN not sb's cup of tea.
I can't bear (doing) sth  = I hate (doing) sth. SYN I can't stand (doing) sth.
grow on sb  If sth or sb grows on you, you begin to like it/them more.
too ... for my liking  If sth is too loud, bright, etc. for your liking, you don't like it because it's too loud, bright, etc.
revolve around sb/sth  have sb/sth as the most important part.
live for sth  consider sth to be the most important thing in your life.

1 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.

1. I'm not interested in fashion. Fashion's not my thing.
2. She hates big cities. She can't
3. I don't like football. Football's not my cup
4. He lives for his work. His life revolves
5. I don't like meat any more. I've gone
6. I love anything with sugar in it. I've got a
t7. They really like it. They're mad

2 Complete the dialogues with one word.

1. Do you watch war films? ~ No, they're too violent for my
2. Do you like Indian food? ~ I used to, but I've ~ off it recently.
3. Are you rock music? ~ Not at all. I can't it.
4. Jazz isn't my of tea. ~ No, it's not really my either.
5. He likes her a lot, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he's about her.
6. I didn't think you liked modern art. ~ I didn't, but it on you.
7. All he thinks about is surfing. ~ Yes, his whole life around it.
8. She's totally dedicated, isn't she? ~ Yes. She just for gymnastics.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the sentences at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
The bookcase was falling to pieces but I managed to put it together again.

They knocked the building down; now they're going to put up a block of flats in its place.

My shirt was torn to bits in the washing machine. I tried to sew it up, but in the end I had to throw it away.

Part of the fence has blown down in the wind. I hope I can put it up again.

There was a scene in the film where a car blew up and the house next to it burnt down.

The car ran into a tree. Fortunately no one was hurt, but the car was a write-off.

Two young guys stopped outside the bar. broke the door down and smashed the place up. It was terrible for the owners, who had just spent a lot of money smartening it up.

**Glossary**

**put sth together**
put sth up

in sth/sb's place
throw sth away

burn down
run into sth/sb
write-off

break sth down
smash sth up
smarten sth/sb up

make or mend sth by joining all the different parts.
construct sth such as a building, fence, some shelves, etc.
instead of sth/sb (also in place of sth/sb).
get rid of sth that you no longer want. SYN throw sth out.
be destroyed by fire (also burn sth down),
hit sth/sb with a car, bus, etc. SYN crash into sth/sb,
a car, bus, etc. that has been so badly damaged that it cannot be repaired. WRITE sth v.
make sth fall down or open by hitting it hard.
SYN smash sth down.
destroy sth deliberately (because you want to do it).
make a place or a person look more attractive.

**spotlight to pieces/bits**

The chair is falling to pieces. = starting to break. SYN fall to bits / fall apart (see picture 1).
The chair has fallen to pieces. = it has now broken.
He picked up the paper and tore it to pieces. = destroyed it by tearing it into small pieces.
SYN tear sth to bits.
Sometimes to pieces and to bits are used for emphasis and not meant literally (as in the reference to the shirt in picture 3).
1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
1 He ought to smarten
2 The car had to be written
3 The wind blew the tree
4 You should throw these eggs
5 She tore the letter to
6 The document was old; it just fell
7 The chair broke, but I managed to put it
8 They got into a fight and smashed the room

a pieces.
b apart.
c together.
d himself up.
e up.
f down.
g off.
h away.

2 Complete the dialogues.
1 What happened to the old flats? ~ They __________ them down and rebuilt them.
2 Why is she living in a hotel? ~ Oh, her house burnt __________ in the forest fires.
3 Where’s Mike? ~ He’s out in the garden, smashing __________ some boxes.
4 I hear his car is a __________. ~ Yes, he __________ into a wall. Fortunately he wasn’t hurt.
5 This table’s __________ to bits. ~ Never mind, Bob will be able to put it __________ again.
6 We need another shelf in the study. ~ Well, I could put one __________ if you like.
7 Did the police have to break into the flat? ~ Yes, they had to break the door __________.
8 This sheet is torn __________ bits. ~ Well, why don’t you __________ it away?

3 Cross out one word which is not correct.
1 Our neighbour was burnt down his garden shed.
2 I’m going to get a new desk: this one is falling down to pieces.
3 It was very old, so when I picked it up, it just fell to apart in my hands.
4 Suddenly there was a very loud noise and the oil tank blew it up.
5 The dog got hold of my bag and tore it up to pieces.
6 We knocked the garage down and in its place of it we built a small studio.
7 If you don’t want those CDs, why don’t you just throw them out off?
8 The firemen smashed out the door down so that they could rescue the baby.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.
I joined all the separate parts of the shelves again. PUT ! put the shelves together again.
1 The building was destroyed by fire. DOWN
2 The damage to the car couldn’t be repaired. WRITE
3 Can’t you get rid of those papers? AWAY
4 They had to destroy the building. KNOCK
5 The book broke into separate parts. BITS
6 The motorcyclist hit a brick wall. CRASH
7 I repaired the hole in my pocket. SEW
8 I sold the chair and put a sofa there instead. ITS

5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Our house was a terrible mess when we first moved in. In the kitchen, the cupboards were all falling (1) __________ and the room was really dirty. The first job was to clean everything up and (2) __________ out all the rubbish which the previous owners had left. Then Mark put some new cupboards (3) __________ and we were able to unpack our things. In the living room, we had to smarten everything (4) __________ ; that meant cleaning and redecorating. The curtains were dirty and torn in places, but they were very pretty, so I washed them and spent the afternoon (5) __________ them up. There was also an ugly wardrobe in the bedroom which took up a lot of space, so we got rid of it. And in its (6) __________ , Mark (7) __________ up some shelves and a small cupboard. At last it was starting to feel like home.
I can say how things begin and end

A Different beginnings and endings

I started off the race quite well, but I couldn't keep it up and eventually I came in fifth.

She set out to write a short story, but finished up with a best-selling novel.

The fire broke out in the basement.

Have they put it out yet?

The business closed down last month.

They were mad to set it up anyway.

I recently took up golf, but I had to give it up because of a back.

Glossary

start sth off begin doing sth (also start off begin to happen).

keep sth up continue sth at the same high level.

come in (first, second, etc.) finish a race in a particular position.

finish (up) with sth have sth at the end.

break out (of a fire, a fight, or a war) start.

put sth out stop sth burning.

close down (of a business activity) close permanently because it is making no money (also close sth down).

take sth up start or learn to do sth, especially for pleasure.

give sth up / give up doing sth stop doing sth you have done for a period of time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Do these sentences describe something that is beginning or ending? Write B or E.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Eddie has taken up golf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pedro came in first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lennie set up the café in 2008.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Write the correct particle.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>When he first became manager, he set ______ to make a lot of changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mike set ______ the company in 2006, but had to close it ______ because of the recession.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I took ______ tennis because I needed more exercise, but I gave it ______ soon afterwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A fire broke ______ in the warehouse, but they managed to put it ______ quite quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>People didn't eat much at the party, so we finished ______ with lots of leftover food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>It was a good race and Pam started ______ quite well. Unfortunately she couldn't quite keep it ______, and in the end I think she came ______ third.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

112 Concepts
A new beginning

"The 1960s shopping centre was a disaster. It's hard to imagine how it came about in the first place, but the council decided to knock the whole thing down and start from scratch with a new development. There were problems early on, and it took ages to get the project off the ground, but the architects finally came up with a design that everyone liked. Now, two years later, the centre is really taking shape. Judging by the look of it, I feel that the designers started out with some good ideas, but have ended up with something of a compromise. It's quite attractive, but architecturally it doesn't break any new ground."

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come about</td>
<td>happen (often used of sth that is surprising or hard to explain).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock sth down</td>
<td>destroy a building by breaking the walls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(start) from scratch</td>
<td>(start) from a new beginning. (See page 144.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early on</td>
<td>soon after the beginning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth off the ground</td>
<td>If you get a project off the ground, you make it start happening successfully. A project can also get off the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up with sth</td>
<td>produce ideas or a solution to sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take shape</td>
<td>develop and become more organized and complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judging by/from sth</td>
<td>used to say what you think, based on what you have seen, heard, or learnt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start out with sth</td>
<td>start doing sth with a particular intention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end up</td>
<td>finish in a situation or place that you didn't expect to be in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break new ground</td>
<td>do sth that hasn't been done before.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Circle the correct answer.

1 Most of the problems happened early in | on.
2 It took us a couple of years to get the company off the ground | land.
3 We started out | up with the aim of creating a youth club.
4 The main part of the sports centre is now taking form | shape.
5 They're going to knock down | over all the old houses.
6 I don't know who went | came up with this idea, but it won't work.
7 Where did you end up | out last night?
8 He joined the army but I don't know how that came about | off.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capital letters. Keep the meaning the same.

1 I'm starting my essay from the beginning. SCRATCH
2 The problems occurred soon after the beginning. EARLY
3 Based on his story, the boys are innocent. JUDGING
4 They've done something completely new. BREAK
5 The house is developing and looking more finished. SHAPE
6 How did these changes happen? COME
7 They've destroyed the offices. KNOCK
8 I'm sure they'll find a solution. COME
A Personal time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>About me</th>
<th>About you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I often get up at the crack of dawn.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can get ready to go out in no time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go to the doctor once in a blue moon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go horse-riding from time to time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most of my clothes are a bit out of date.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One day I'm going to travel round the world.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm happy living where I am for the time being.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I do most things on impulse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I live from day to day; I don't think about the future.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

| at the crack of dawn | INF very early in the morning. |
| once in a blue moon  | INF hardly ever; very rarely.  |
| out of date           | 1 old-fashioned (as above). 2 without the most recent information, e.g. These figures are out of date. |

one day at some time in the future.

on impulse without thinking about s.th before you do it.

live from day to day live without thinking about what will happen in the future.

SYN on the spur of the moment.

1 Match the idioms with their opposites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at the crack of dawn</th>
<th>in next to no time</th>
<th>for the time being</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>out of date</td>
<td>on impulse</td>
<td>once in a blue moon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 fashionable OPP

2 late at night OPP

3 planned in advance OPP

4 very often OPP

5 very slowly OPP

6 forever OPP

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I buy CDs on the ______ of the moment.
2 Hang on, I'll be ready in ______ time.
3 This technology is ______ of date.
4 I got up at the crack of ______.
5 One ______, I'll learn to play the piano.
6 She sees him once in a ______ moon.
7 I visit them from ______ to ______.
8 She just lives from ______ to ______.

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences at the top of the page true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

4 ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY Look up the word time in your dictionary and read through the idioms at the end of the entry. Make a note of any new idioms you find interesting, and think how you would translate them into your own language.
B Doing things at the right time

The other day I fixed up a meeting with the staff for 10 o’clock. I was there at ten on the dot, and almost everyone else was there in good time; everyone, that is, except Kevin. He kept us waiting for twenty minutes, then turned up with his usual excuse that he’d been held up on the train. He does this over and over again, and it’s the same with his work: he only gets things done right at the last minute. I’ve spoken to him about all this, but I’m just wasting my breath. It’s only a matter of time before he has to leave.

Glossary

the other day recently; a few days ago.
fix sth up arrange for sth to happen.
on the dot at exactly the time you mentioned or arranged. (See page 144.)
in good time before the time you need to be somewhere or do sth.
keep sb waiting make sb wait for you.
turn up arrive (often used when sb arrives late or doesn’t arrive at all).
hold sb up (usually passive) cause a delay or make sb late.
over and over again many times; repeatedly. SYN time and time again.
(right) at the last minute at the latest possible time.
waste your breath say things that sb doesn’t listen to or take notice of.
(only) a matter of time used to say that sth will definitely happen, but you don’t know when.

5 Replace the underlined words and phrases with an idiom or phrasal verb that has a similar meaning.
- I’d like to get to the airport before the time we need to be there. in good time.
  1 She’s very punctual – always gets to the office at 9 a.m. exactly. on
  2 I’ve told him repeatedly, and it’s getting on my nerves. again
  3 He made me wait. kept
  4 Have you arranged your appointment yet? up
  5 He cancelled his trip just before it was too late. minute
  6 I don’t often get delayed on my way to work. up
  7 I saw my cousin very recently, just by chance. the
  8 What time did she arrive last night? up

6 Complete the sentences. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 7.)
  1 Do you normally arrive in good for school, college, or work?
  2 Do you ever people waiting? If so, when?
  3 Do you often up late for social arrangements? If so, when?
  4 Do you ever do things at the last minute? If so, what?
  5 Do you often get held up on your way to somewhere? If so, when?
  6 Do you ever give people advice, but feel you’re wasting your time?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 in your notebook, or ask another student.
A Quantities, amounts, and times

'If you count up all the passwords I have for websites, it's probably about ten in all.'

'I added up all the hours I had spent at the office and took away my lunch breaks: it came to an amazing 66 hours a week.'

'I lost count of the number of visitors we had, but it must have been as many as 50.'

'I would pay €20 for a haircut at the very most.'

'We had dozens of requests for brochures, and quite a few orders as a result.'

'Mila counted out €100,000 in €10 notes. Round about ten of the notes were badly torn.'

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in all</th>
<th>add sth up</th>
<th>as a total. SYN in total.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take sth away</td>
<td>If you add up five and four and three, you get twelve.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to sth</td>
<td>If you take four away from ten, you get six. add up to a total amount.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as many as</td>
<td>used before a number to show how large and surprising it is. not more than, and probably much less than. OPP at the (very) least.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the (very) most</td>
<td>dozens of sth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dozens of sth</td>
<td>INF a lot of people or things (a dozen = twelve).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite a few / a lot (of sth)</td>
<td>round about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round about</td>
<td>a fairly large amount or number (of sth). approximately.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Find the end of each idiom or phrasal verb.

at the most | in all | at the very least | quite a few | add up | total | lose count (of sth) |

2 Put the sentences in order and add one missing word.

1 count out the cups, and there were sixty.
   the | saw, | in, | we | dozens | rabbits | fields
   Dubai | friends | has | few | she | quite | in
   guests | of | the | lost | we | of | number
   flight | costs | the | least | at | very | $900
   €50 | the | that | we | came | surprised | were | bill
   seven | from | get | you | if | three | away | you | four

3 Complete the dialogues.

1 Eighty people came to the party in . ~ Really? As as that! I'm amazed.
2 Why are you counting those beans? ~ Oh, Dad! Now you've made me count.
3 I'm planning to invite about 20 people. ~ Yes; thirty the most.
4 What did it cost, total? ~ It to £50.80.
5 Did you add all those numbers ? ~ Yes, then I away 10% and got 60.
6 If you count all the residents, there are 600. ~ Really? That's a lot.
### Numbers in idioms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong> <em>I had one or two ideas about the plans.</em></td>
<td>one or two a few.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong> We went through the points one by one.</td>
<td>one by one one at a time (i.e. first one, then the next, then the next, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong>&lt;sup&gt;st&lt;/sup&gt; <em>She puts her children first.</em></td>
<td>put sb/sth first consider sb/sth to be more important than anyone or anything else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong> He saw Carrie in a café with Andrew and put two and two together.</td>
<td>put two and two together guess the truth from what you see or hear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong>&lt;sup&gt;nd&lt;/sup&gt; I was having second thoughts about the flat.</td>
<td>have second thoughts change your opinion after thinking about sth again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong>&lt;sup&gt;rd&lt;/sup&gt; His two previous marriages failed, so he's hoping it will be third time lucky.</td>
<td>third time lucky used when you have failed to do sth twice and hope it will succeed the third time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Ten to one they'll miss the bus again.</td>
<td>ten to one very probably.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 Let's go fifty-fifty on dinner at Carlo's.</td>
<td>go fifty-fifty share the cost of sth equally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 I'm not a hundred per cent sure.</td>
<td>one / a hundred per cent completely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Every player gave a hundred per cent.</td>
<td>give a hundred (and ten) per cent put as much effort into sth as you can (and ten adds emphasis here).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 Every player gave a hundred and ten per cent.</td>
<td>never in a million years used for emphasizing how impossible it seems that sth could ever happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1m Did you think he would marry her? ~ Never in a million years!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight in his twenties**

*He's in his twenties.* = between 20 and 29.  
*She's in her early thirties.* = between 31 and 33.  
*We're in our mid-fifties.* = between 54 and 56.  
*I'm in my late sixties.* = between 67 and 69.

### 4 Write in the correct numbers.

1. She's thirty in a year or two, so she's in her late ___________ years; it was a big surprise.
2. Did you expect to win the prize? ~ Never in a ___________ years; it was a big surprise.
3. I'd failed the first two interviews, so it was a case of ___________ time lucky, fortunately.
4. I've met the director on ___________ or ___________ occasions and he's very friendly.
5. He does his best – he always gives a ___________ per cent.
6. I had thought it would be a nice house to live in, but I'm having ___________ thoughts.
7. I saw her suitcase and the plane tickets and put ___________ and ___________ together.
8. Look, the bill's a bit expensive; why don't we go ___________?

### 5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals.

1. I'm not completely certain where he is. A HUNDRED
2. He'll very probably be late. TEN
3. She changed her mind about the flat. SECOND
4. He must be round about forty-five. FORTIES
5. They did the first question, then the next, and so on. ONE
6. He thinks his work is more important than anything. FIRST
7. Shall we share the cost of the petrol? FIFTY
A At home

I haven't a clue how to work this DVD player.
~ Let's ask Matt. He'll do it in no time.
The rooms in a mess. There are books and CDs all over the place.
~ Don't worry. I'll sort them out.
I've been doing housework all morning, and my back's killing me.
~ You need a nice hot bath. That'll do the trick.
Do you think these trousers have had it?
~ Yes, and anyway, they're a bit on the small side for you now.
Dan's always in such a hurry to finish things.
~ Well, he shouldn't be. He needs to take his time and relax.

Glossary

not have a clue INF used to emphasize that you do not know sth. SYNS not have the faintest idea INF, have no idea INF.
in no time so soon or so quickly that it is surprising (also in next to no time).
all over the place in a very untidy state.
sort sth out arrange sth in a tidy and organized way.
my back/feet etc. is/are killing me INF my back hurts, my feet hurt, etc.
do the trick INF resolve a problem.
have had it INF If sth has had it, it is in a very bad condition and is no longer useful.
(a bit) on the small/big side INF slightly too small/big (also a bit on the heavy/expensive side, etc.).
in (such) a hurry to do sth impatient to do sth.
take your time (over sth) do sth without hurrying.

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.
   1 The boys sorted everything out.  4 My legs are killing me.
   2 Those shoes are on the small side.  5 The food was all over the place.
   3 I got there in next to no time.  6 The thick socks did the trick.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.
   1 Were you in hurry to finish?  4 The TV has it: it's hopeless.
   2 The books were over the place.  5 We got there no time.
   3 He told me to take time.  6 Who's that? ~ I haven't clue.

3 Replace the underlined words with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.
   1 He is always impatient to get things done.
   2 I bought a jacket but I think it's slightly too small.
   3 It's a long walk to my place, but they got here surprisingly quickly.
   4 After the walk, my feet were really hurting.
   5 Put some milk on the stain and leave it; that'll solve the problem.
   6 What time does the train leave? ~ I don't know.
   7 The children's clothes were in a very untidy state.
   8 I spent the afternoon organizing and tidying up all the papers.
**B At work**

- We'll be rushed off our feet this month.
- That's OK. I know a couple of people who can help us out.
- Work's getting on top of me at the moment.
- That's because you think about it too much. You need to learn to switch off.
- I'm worried I'll be out of my depth in this new job.
- Look, just take it one step at a time – you'll be fine.
- Steve thinks he's in with a chance of getting that job.
- Yes, and I've put in a good word for him – that should help.
- We can't work any harder – we're already at full stretch.
- Yes, but we've got more orders piling up.

Glossary

- **be rushed/run off your feet** be extremely busy.
- **help sb out** help sb, especially in a difficult situation.
- **get on top of sb** be too much for sb to manage or deal with.
- **switch off** INF stop thinking about sth.
- **be out of your depth** be in a situation (often a job) that is too difficult for you to understand or manage.
- **one step at a time** slowly; gradually.
- **be in a chance of doing sth** INF have the possibility of succeeding or achieving sth.
- **put in a (good) word for sb** say positive things to another person about sb, to help them get a job, etc.
- **at full stretch** If sb is working at full stretch, they are working as hard as possible. become larger in quantity or amount.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1. Work often piles up  
2. He's been working too hard, and  
3. It won't be easy to get the job, but  
4. We're already at full stretch, so  
5. We'll get there as long as  
6. The club might accept him as a member if

   a. he's in with a chance.  
   b. we take it one step at a time.  
   c. at this time of the year.  
   d. it's getting on top of him.  
   e. you put in a good word for him.  
   f. we can't provide anything else.

5 Complete the last word in each sentence. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1. It's been terrible today. We've been rushed off our  
2. Can she win? — Yes, I think she's in with a  
3. Don't hurry. Just take it one step at a  
4. We can't produce any more; we're already at full  
5. If things get really difficult, Alex said he would help us  
6. Is she doing OK? — No, to be honest, I think she's out of her  
7. She worries about things all the time. — Yes, her problem is that she can't switch  
8. Will he get promotion? — Yes, I think he will, if I put in a good  

Concepts 119
52 I can give advice

**MARK** The university I want to go to has turned me down: they said I wasn’t good enough to study journalism. Now I’m not sure if I want to go to university at all.

**TINA** If I were you, Mark, I’d say to myself: ‘OK, in that case I’ll go to another university and prove I can make the grade.’

**COLIN** Mark, stop feeling sorry for yourself; there’s more to life than a university degree. In your shoes, I’d go out and earn some money.

**JED** Well, that’s life, Mark. But if the university thinks you aren’t good enough to do journalism, maybe you’d be better off applying for something else. Good luck.

**LISA** Mark, you have to take a number of things into account, but you could always do your exams again and apply to the same university next year.

### Glossary

- **turn sb down** say ‘no’ to sb when they apply for sth or offer sth.
- **if I were you** used to introduce advice (also, *if I were in your place/position/shoes, I’d …*).
- **in that case** if that is the situation; if that happens or has happened.
- **make the grade** reach the necessary standard and be successful.
- **feel sorry for yourself** be unhappy for yourself.
- **in your shoes** in your situation (followed by *I would / I’d …*).
- **that’s life** used to say that sth is disappointing but you must accept it.
- **be better off (doing sth)** used to suggest that sb should do sth differently.
- **good luck** INF used to wish sb success with sth. SYN *(the) best of luck.*
- **take sth into account** think about sth carefully before making a decision. SYN *take sth into consideration.*
- **can/could always** used for making a suggestion.

1. **Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.**
   1. Don’t feel sorry for | with yourself.
   2. If I were in your shoes | place, I’d go.
   3. I’m sure you’ll make the mark | grade.
   4. Take it all into account | consideration.
   5. She’d be better off to work | working.
   6. You can | could always go next year.

2. **Complete the dialogues.**
   1. She doesn’t want to sell her car, but she needs the money. ~ Well, that’s.
   2. Is it a difficult decision? ~ Yes, there’s a lot to take into.
   4. My boss wants to reduce my salary. ~ Well, in that , I would leave.
   5. I’m in a terrible situation. ~ Oh come on, stop feeling for yourself.
   6. Did they offer you the job? ~ Yes, but I it down.

3. **ABOUT YOUR OPINION** Read about Penny’s situation, then complete the idioms in the first part of each sentence, and finish each one with different advice.

   **PENNY** (secretary) ‘I like my job, but the money’s not very good. I’ve been offered a job with more money, but I’m not sure if it will be very interesting. What should I do?’

### ABOUT YOU

1. Penny, if I
2. Penny, in your
3. You always
4. I think you’d be off
   I’d
   I’d
   I’d
   I’d
Review: Concepts

Unit 44

1. Complete the sentences with words from the box. Then write your answers about yourself in the column on the right.

   dying  feel  do  care  need  do  set  could  pick

   Write down:
   ▶ something you could do with.
   1. one thing you own that you couldn’t _______ without.
   2. something you couldn’t _______ less about.
   3. something you’ve _______ your heart on.
   4. something you _______ like doing at the moment.
   5. a situation in which you can’t _______ and choose.
   6. something you’re _______ to do soon.
   7. something you could sell, if _______ be.
   8. something you could make _______ with.

   ABOUT YOU
   more time to sleep in the morning

Unit 45

1. Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it?

   A B C D E F
   1   2   3
   4   5   6
   7   8   9

   1. If you do a piece of work very badly, you _______ it up.
   2. If you cancel something that has been arranged, you _______ it off.
   3. If you think about what is going to happen in the future, you _______ ahead.
   4. If you make a plan and it goes _______, it means it happens.
   5. If you delay something and move it to a later time, you _______ it back.
   6. If things happen in the way you expected, they go according to _______.
   7. If you move something to an earlier time, you bring it _______.
   8. If you’ve got something ________, it means you have arranged to do something.
   9. If something spoils your plans or has a bad effect on them, it _______ them up.

   The phrase in the grey squares is _______.

Unit 46

1. Agree with each speaker, using the word in capitals to complete the sentence.

   ▶ I’m not very keen on aerobics. INTO ~ No, I’m not really _______ it either.
   1. I don’t like this music. MAD ~ No, I
   2. I don’t enjoy going to the gym very much. TEA ~ No, it’s
   3. I learnt to like abstract art after a while. GROWS ~ Yes, it
   4. I used to love shopping, but not any more. OFF ~ No, I’ve
   5. This soup is very spicy. LIKING ~ Yes, it’s
   6. I hate white shoes. BEAR ~ I agree. I
Unit 47

1 Put the verbs into the correct column in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DAMAGE or DESTRUCTION</th>
<th>REPAIR or CONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sew sth up</th>
<th>tear sth to pieces</th>
<th>burn sth down</th>
<th>put sth together</th>
<th>smarten sth up</th>
<th>write sth off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall apart</td>
<td>smash sth up</td>
<td>fall to bits</td>
<td>put sth up</td>
<td>break sth down</td>
<td>crash into sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences using idioms and phrasal verbs from the box in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blow up</th>
<th>blow down</th>
<th>throw sth away</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tear sth to bits</td>
<td>write sth off</td>
<td>fall to pieces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The tree in the back garden [blow up] in the wind.
2. The boy was so angry with his school report that he [throw sth away].
3. After the accident the insurance company decided to [write sth off] the car.
4. There was a bomb in the car. Two people were injured when it [blow up].
5. When she sat on the chair it just [fall to pieces]; it was quite funny, actually.
6. We don't need these old magazines. Why don't we [throw sth away]?

Unit 48

1 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences (a and b). Write it in.

1 a I think we'll have to start [scratch].
   b Judging [scratch], it's going to be a very modern building.
2 a Who [put sth up] with that brilliant idea?
   b Who [jumped] in last in the race?
3 a How did the fire [break out]?
   b The latest dictionary will [break out] new ground.
4 a When did your brother [start] the company?
   b The planners [start] out to improve the traffic situation.
5 a I made good progress at first, but I couldn't keep it [going].
   b We thought about going to a French restaurant, but we ended [up] in a pizzeria.
6 a Did they manage to [put out] the fire?
   b When we started [put out], we knew we would need more money.

2 Tick (√) the answers which are possible. Be careful: one, two, or all three may be possible.

1 Last year they [set out] a business which has been very successful.
   set out □ set up □ set off □
2 When did the [break out]?
   lesson □ fire □ war □
3 The building project [is taking shape] breaks new ground □ is getting off the ground □
4 I eventually decided to [start] golf.
   take up □ give up □ start out □
5 The shop had to be [closed down] □ closed down □
   put out □ knocked down □
Unit 49

1 Find answers to the clues by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OVER</th>
<th>FOR</th>
<th>ON</th>
<th>THE</th>
<th>SPUR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OUT</td>
<td>OF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVER</td>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>OF</td>
<td>THE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGAIN</td>
<td>BEING</td>
<td>DOT</td>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>MOMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>GOOD</td>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>MINUTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE</td>
<td>DAWN</td>
<td>AT</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>LAST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRACK</td>
<td>OF</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>TIME</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> At the last possible time when something should happen. At the last minute.
1 At the exact time which was mentioned or arranged.
2 Another way to say 'time and time again'.
3 Old-fashioned.
4 On impulse; without thinking about something before acting.
5 Very early in the morning.
6 For now and the immediate future.
7 Very quickly or very soon.
8 Before the time when you need to be somewhere or do something.

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.

waste time keep hold
once fix turn last
up breath moon time
minute waiting up up

1 We waited for hours, and eventually he ___________ at midnight, without an excuse or apology.
2 I'm sorry I'm so late, but there was a problem on the train and we got ___________ for an hour.
3 We had an appointment at 4.00, but the manager ___________ us ___________ until 4.30.
4 I managed to book my plane ticket at the ___________ , which was very lucky.
5 We meet up for a meal ___________ in a blue ___________ - probably every couple of years.
6 I see Larry from ___________ to ___________ - he seems quite well these days.
7 It would be lovely to see you; let's try to ___________ something ___________ for the weekend.
8 It's no good telling her not to marry him - you're just ___________ your

Unit 50

1 Use the numbers in the box to help you to complete the sentences. You will need the number and one more word in each sentence.

3rd 1st 100 2nd 1,000,000 50 dozens 30s

> They let us through ___________ by ___________.
1 He's not the most skilful player, but he always gives a ___________.
2 You mustn't pay for everything. Let's ___________.
3 I thought it would be a good idea to get a car, but now I'm ___________.
4 There were ___________ people at the gallery - at least 20 or 30.
5 I've failed my driving test twice, so I'm hoping it will be ___________ lucky.
6 She had Marcus six years ago when she was 26, so she must be in her ___________.
7 I never thought in a ___________ I'd become Managing Director one day.
2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrase that has a similar meaning. The first word has been given to help you.

1. There were approximately fifteen.
2. We had twenty-five students altogether.
3. If you subtract five, we'll have 21 left.
4. I don't know exactly how many, but a fairly large number.
5. If you include Mike and Chloe, the total is 15.
6. I'm almost sure he'll forget his homework.
7. He saw the ring on her finger and guessed the truth.
8. There should be 50 as an absolute maximum.

Unit 51

1. Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it?

   1. That will solve the problem. = That will do the ________
   2. I've been extremely busy. = I've been ________ off my feet.
   3. You have the possibility of succeeding. = You are in with a ________
   4. In a very untidy state. = All ________ the place.
   5. Using everything that is available. = At full ________
   6. I haven't a clue. = I haven't the ________ idea.
   7. The work is too much for me to manage. = The work is getting on ________ of me.
   8. My back hurts. = My back is ________ me!
   9. I'm in a situation which is too difficult for me to handle. = I'm out of my ________
   10. I'm taking things slowly. = I'm taking things one ________ at a time.
   11. This washing machine can't be repaired. = This washing machine has ________ it.

   The phrase in the grey squares is ________

Unit 52

1. Complete Mr Web's letter of advice. Then underline the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

   Dear Rhona
   Poor boy! Well, if I (1) ________ you, I would try and think about things from his point of view. Perhaps he's feeling (2) ________ for himself, and he probably feels he would be better (3) ________ with your family than at home. Think about it: in his (4) ________, would you want to sit around an empty home? He might be afraid, and that would be perfectly natural. You (5) ________ always try giving him some little jobs to do, helping you around your home. And you need to take into (6) ________ the fact that his parents work, and maybe they don't realize that he is lonely. In that (7) ________, the best thing would be to talk to them gently about it.

   The best of (8) ________

   Mr Web
We've lived here ever since we got married. It took ages to find the right place, then at last we saw this one. We liked it because it's modern, and there's parking for two cars as well. Unfortunately, it's near a busy road, but we still bought it in spite of that. We had to buy furniture as soon as we moved in, and our bed didn't arrive for weeks; in the meantime, we slept on the floor! We've been here six years now. On the one hand I'd like a bigger house, but on the other, we've got great neighbours here, and we can't really afford to move. It looks as if we'll stay, but even if we sold, we wouldn't move far.

**Glossary**

**ever since** continuously from the time or event mentioned.

**at last** finally, after problems or delays.

**in spite of** If you do sth in spite of another fact, it is surprising that the other fact didn't stop you doing it. SYN despite.

**as soon as** at the moment that, or as quickly as possible after. SYN the minute (that).

**in the meantime** in the period of time between two times or events.

**on the one hand ... on the other (hand)** used to introduce different points of view, especially when they are opposites.

**as if** used for saying how sth or sb appears. SYN as though.

**even if** used for saying that what follows if makes no difference, e.g. Even if we run, we'll be late.

**spotlight as well, in addition** We use as well and in addition when we are adding information. As well is more informal than in addition. Notice the position of these expressions.

The house is very spacious, and it's close to my parents as well. The flat is beautifully furnished. In addition, it is in a good location.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.
   1 I've worked here ever since | even if | I left school.
   2 Pete's train was an hour late, so in the meantime | on the one hand | we went for a coffee.
   3 It sounds as if | as though | Patty is enjoying herself in India.
   4 I'll let you know as soon as | the minute | I hear anything.
   5 He's already told me that even if | as if | he's offered the job, he won't accept it.
   6 We decided to go on despite | in spite of the cost.

2 Complete the sentences with suitable link phrases.
   1 I really liked Sophie | I met her. She was very funny, but we had so much in common.
   2 It took us all day, but | I found the pair of shoes I wanted.
   3 She's been at home | she had the baby.
   4 There are some black clouds coming over, and it looks | it's going to rain.
   5 Marie would love to spend more time at home with her family, but | I think she would really miss the satisfaction she gets from her job.
   6 | of course, she may not have enough money to live on.
I can use fixed phrases with two key words

There are many idiomatic phrases in English where two words are joined by a conjunction, which is usually and. The order of the words is almost always fixed (come and go, not go and come), and in many cases the two words are near synonyms or opposites, or words with a repeated sound pattern, e.g. fast and furious.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pain in my arm comes and goes.</td>
<td>come and go be present for a short time, then go away, then return, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We can't do anything about it now. We'll just have to wait and see what they decide.</td>
<td>wait and see delay action until you know what is going to happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We need to see the facts and figures before making a decision.</td>
<td>facts and figures accurate and detailed information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The action is really fast and furious at the beginning of the film.</td>
<td>fast and furious (of films, games, shows, etc.) full of rapid action and quick changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've been up and down the road, but I can't see them.</td>
<td>up and down the road = along the road in both directions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're up bright and early this morning.</td>
<td>bright and early early in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love the peace and quiet of the countryside.</td>
<td>peace and quiet calm and silence, especially in contrast to a noisy environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First and foremost we need to book the hotel.</td>
<td>first and foremost used for emphasizing the main point or the most important reason for sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've been going backwards and forwards all day.</td>
<td>backwards and forwards from one place to another and back again, many times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you see them much? ~ On and off, but not a great deal.</td>
<td>on and off used to say that something happens a few times, then stops for a period, then starts again, and so on. SYNS off and on, now and then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm sick and tired of all this rain.</td>
<td>sick and tired of sth very unhappy about sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She told me what he said word for word.</td>
<td>word for word using exactly the same words.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We'll get the money one way or another.</td>
<td>one way or another / the other INF using one of several possible methods, although you don’t know yet which one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The books will be here in three weeks, give or take a few days.</td>
<td>give or take used to say that the number you have just stated is nearly correct, but not exactly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll find another job sooner or later.</td>
<td>sooner or later at some point in the future.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight lovely and ...**

This informal expression is used when you are emphasizing that something is good because of the quality mentioned:

- It's lovely and warm by the fire.
- This water is lovely and cold.
- It was lovely and quiet without the children.
1 Complete the phrases.
   1 first and  
   2 sick and  
   3 sooner or  
   4 facts and  
   5 one way or  
   6 give or  
   7 on and  
   8 word for  
   9 peace and  
   10 fast and  

2 Combine the words from the three boxes to make nine idioms. (You can use and, or, and for more than once.)

   come one way lovely wait bright  
   word now backwards fast  
   and or for  
   see early forwards furious word  
   warm another then go  

3 Use one of these words in each sentence below, then complete the phrase.

one way sick now bright give backwards up wait peace word first ✓

> First and foremost we have to find somewhere to live.
1 She only read it once but she was able to repeat it for.
2 They're not giving out the results yet, so we'll have to and.
3 He had to get up and to catch the seven o'clock train.
4 I've been helping Sandra, and I've been going and all day.
5 We still see them and , but not as much as we used to.
6 People are getting really and of the terrible pollution from the factory.
7 I'm not sure where the house is, but we'll find it or.
8 We looked and the road, but there was no one there.
9 You pay £30 for a meal, or a few pounds.
10 I've got a house in the mountains, and I go there for the and

4 Rewrite the sentences using a phrase from the opposite page. Keep the meaning the same.

> I only see him occasionally.
1 We need to see more detailed information.
2 The first half of the game was very quick.
3 She repeated his exact message.
4 I'm very unhappy about all this snow.
5 There's no noise in the garden.
6 I don't know how, but I'll find them.
7 I get a pain for a bit and then it stops.
8 I'll paint the room at some point in the future.
9 This water's great – it's straight from the fridge.
10 I meet my old friends now and then.

I only see him now and then.  
We need to see the f  
The first half was f  
She repeated it w  
I'm s of it.  
The garden is l  
I'll find them o  
The pain c  
I'll paint the room s  
This water is l  
I meet my old friends o

5 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE  Do you have similar phrases in your language? How would you translate the phrases on the left-hand page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student who speaks your language.
A Opposites

Simon said I was out of tune, but I think I was the only one singing in tune.

In theory the plan sounds great, but I don’t think it’ll work in practice.

The doctor’s off duty right now, but he’ll be back on duty at six.

The phones were in working order yesterday, but already two are out of order.

I don’t know if he pushed her by accident, or whether he did it on purpose.

The crowd was getting out of control, but the police now have the situation under control.

Glossary

out of tune singing or playing the wrong musical notes. OPP in tune.
off duty (of nurses, police officers, etc.) not working at a particular time. OPP on duty.
by accident used to say what should happen or be true (often used when it doesn’t happen or isn’t true). used to say what really happens and what is really true.
in theory in a way that is not planned or organized. OPP on purpose.
in practice (of a machine) functioning properly. OPP out of order.
in working order impossible to manage or control. OPP under control.
out of control

A number of other prepositional phrases form opposites in this way:
Tomatoes are in season now. = growing in large amounts and ready to eat now. OPP out of season.
I was in luck — there was one ticket left. = lucky. OPP out of luck.
The lion was just in sight. = able to be seen. OPP out of sight.

1 Write in the correct preposition(s).
1. The idea sounds good in theory.
2. I’m sure she did it by accident.
3. Is everything out of control?
4. He took my pen on purpose.
5. I’m afraid the machine’s in order.
6. She’s not at work; she’s on duty.

2 What are the opposites of these phrases?
1. under control | in luck |
2. off duty | in tune |
3. by accident | out of order |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct word.
1. I don’t like eating fruit when it is out of season; it sounded horrible.
2. The group were singing out of tune; it sounded horrible.
3. We saw the fox for a minute, then it disappeared out of sight.
4. They repaired the machines yesterday, so everything should be in working order.
5. There was fighting in the street, but the police now have the situation under control.
6. It’s an interesting proposal in theory; but will it work in practice?
B A range of prepositional phrases

I spoke to the solicitor **on the phone** this morning. She said they needed confirmation **in writing**, but promised to acknowledge it **by return of post**.

I questioned the two boys **at length**. **In the end**, I decided that the books had been taken **by mistake**, although the only people who know **for certain** are the two boys themselves.

Remember that you can speak to a counsellor **in confidence**, so if you have anything **on your mind**, come and see us **at once**.

... Yeah, we had the tree cut down. I couldn’t get to the shed very easily because the tree was **in the way**, and it looked **out of place**...

---

**Glossary**

- **on the phone**: 1 by phone (as above). 2 using the phone now.
- **in writing**: in the form of a letter, document, etc.
- **by return (of post)**: in the next available post (usually the next day).
- **in confidence**: If you talk to sb **in confidence**, they agree not to tell anyone else what you have said.
- **on your mind**: If you have sth **on your mind**, you are thinking and perhaps worrying about it.
- **at once**: immediately. SYN **straight away**.
- **at length**: for a long time and in detail.
- **in the end**: finally.
- **by mistake**: If you do sth **by mistake**, you do it accidentally. without doubt. SYN **for sure**.
- **for certain**
- **in the/ sb’s way**: stopping sb from moving or doing sth.
- **out of place**: not suitable for the place or situation sth is in.

---

4 **Circle the correct preposition.**

1. I can’t see the television – you’re in | on the way.
2. We think they’re safe, but no one knows by | for certain.
3. The head teacher spoke to the students in | at length.
4. You can speak to your doctor by | in confidence.
5. I can’t say for | with sure, but I think I’ll be there around 7.00.
6. They need an answer by | in writing.
7. I rang the doctor and they said he would come in | at once.
8. There wasn’t anything good on at the cinema, so at | in the end we stayed at home.

---

5 **Complete the dialogues.**

1. Will they send the forms to you? ~ Yes, by return
2. Has he got something on his ? ~ Yes, I think he’s worried about his health.
3. Did he take the coat by ? ~ Oh yes, he thought it was his.
4. Is Liselotte free? ~ No, she’s on the at the moment.
5. Was it a fairly quick conversation? ~ No, I spoke to them at
6. Did the ambulance take long? ~ No, it came straight
7. Those pictures look out of there. ~ I agree. They’d look better on the other wall.
8. Did you move the table? ~ Yes, we had to; it was in the
I can use phrasal verbs as commands

Certain intransitive phrasal verbs are commonly used as spoken commands in conversation, e.g. Go away! Get off! This is also true of some transitive phrasal verbs, e.g. Put it down! Take it off! These verbs also have other meanings: see the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning as a command</th>
<th>Other meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Get out!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• (of a piece of information) become known after being secret until recently:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The news got out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come on!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• make progress: Your French is coming on very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• begin: I've got a cold coming on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go away!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• (of a problem) stop existing; disappear: The pain has finally gone away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• leave home, especially for a holiday: I'm going away for a few days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get off!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• leave the place where you work at the end of the day: I get off work early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>on Fridays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• leave on a journey: We'd like to get off before the traffic gets heavy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get in!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• be accepted to study at a school, university, etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I didn't get in to university when I left school, but I went two years later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• arrive at a place: The bus won't get in till 1.00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sit up (straight)</td>
<td></td>
<td>• not go to bed until later than usual: We sat up for hours watching TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick it up!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• learn sth without making a big effort: She picked up some basic French on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• go and get sth; collect sth: Could you pick my dry cleaning up, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Put it down!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• write sth: I put the appointment down in my diary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• kill an animal because it is old or sick (often passive): The animal had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to be put down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold on (tight)!</td>
<td>SYN Hang on!</td>
<td>• wait: Can you hold on a minute? SYN hang on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• continue doing sth even though it is very difficult to do so: They managed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to hold on till the ambulance arrived. SYN hang on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fill it in!</td>
<td></td>
<td>• write the necessary information on a document: Just fill in your name and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• use your time doing sth unimportant while waiting for sth: I'm filling in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>time until 6.00.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Match 1–9 with a–i.
1 The problem won’t go ____________
2 Could you fill this form ____________
3 I put his name ____________
4 She picked a few words ____________
5 If you don’t go ____________
6 Are you going to sit ____________
7 We had to hold ____________
8 When does the train ____________
9 How did the information get ____________

   a out so quickly?
   b up listening to the CD.
   c up all night?
   d down on the list.
   e in and give it back, please?
   f away, I’ll scream.
   g get in?
   h away.
   i on till help arrived.

2 Circle the correct words in the definition.
1 ‘The cat was put down’ means the vet had to treat the cat | end the cat’s life.
2 ‘I get off work at 4.00’ means I leave | get to the office at 4.00.
3 ‘My headache’s gone away’ means my headache has got better | got worse.
4 ‘She sat up for hours’ means she went | didn’t go to bed at the usual time.
5 ‘He had to fill in time’ means he had to write something | wait for something to happen.
6 ‘Did you go away last week?’ means ‘Did you go out | on holiday last week?’

3 Use a suitable spoken command to complete the sentences.
   I’ll give you a lift to school: get in ____________!
1 Don’t leave your coat on the floor: __________________________, please!
2 We don’t want you to come with us, so please __________________________!
3 You aren’t allowed in this room: __________________________!
4 Don’t walk so slowly! __________________________, hurry up!
5 That vase you’re holding is very valuable: please __________________________ immediately!
6 Quick, __________________________! This is our stop!

4 Complete the dialogues.
1 A Come __________________________! We’ll be late!
   B Just hang __________________________ a minute; I’ve got to go and get my coat. Anyway, there’s no great hurry;
   Dad’s train doesn’t get __________________________ till 7.00.
2 A What’s wrong?
   B I don’t feel too good. I’ve got a very bad headache coming __________________________.
   A Oh, can I do anything?
   B No, please just go __________________________ and leave me alone.
3 A Is Matthias doing the management course this summer?
   B He’s a bit upset, actually; he heard today that he hadn’t got __________________________; the course is full.
4 A How’s your Italian coming __________________________?
   B Oh, not bad. That week I spent in Rome was great; I picked __________________________ a lot of vocabulary.

5 What would you say in these situations? Write your answer using a phrasal verb.
   A child is holding a big, angry-looking cat. Put the cat down __________________________!
1 Ask your friend if she’s making progress with her English. How __________________________?
2 Your friend is going near the dry cleaning shop, and you have some trousers that need to be collected. Could __________________________?
3 Ask your friend if he’s having a holiday this summer. Are __________________________?
4 Ask the ticket inspector the time your train arrives in Paris. When __________________________?
5 You’re on a bus with a child, and the driver is going very fast. What do you say to the child? Hold __________________________!
6 You want to know what time your friend finishes work. What __________________________?
Many idioms consist of a verb + (adjective/preposition) + noun.

He's really caught the sun. INF = his face has become red or brown from being in the sun.

She's laying the table. = putting knives, forks, etc. on the table for a meal.

I need to stretch my legs. INF = go for a short walk after sitting for some time.

I tried to catch the waiter's eye. = attract his attention.

Can he tell the time yet? = read the time from a clock.

Come on, let's make a move. INF = begin to leave the place where we are.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You're missing the point. I'm not against war; I'm saying this war is wrong.</td>
<td>miss the point not understand the main idea of what sb is saying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She'll have to work very hard to make up for lost time.</td>
<td>make up for lost time do sth quickly or do more than usual because you couldn't do it before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When he started singing, I'm afraid it was hard to keep a straight face.</td>
<td>If you keep a straight face you don't laugh or smile even though you find sth funny.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could I pick your brain on a grammar problem?</td>
<td>pick sb's brain (or brains) INF ask sb questions because you want to find out more about sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This discussion is hopeless: we're just going round in circles.</td>
<td>go round in circles do or discuss sth without making any progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I said I'd give him a hand when he moved his stuff.</td>
<td>give/lend (sb) a hand (with sth) help sb with sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired – I've been on the go all day.</td>
<td>be on the go INF be very active and busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has a thing about fish: she won't eat it unless it has no bones.</td>
<td>have a thing about sth/sb INF have a strong liking for or dislike of sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why don't you stay the night at our flat?</td>
<td>stay the night sleep at sb's house for one night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darren believes in speaking his mind, and that can upset people.</td>
<td>speak your mind say exactly what you think in a very direct way.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Cross out the mistake in each sentence and correct it.
   1 I’m just going out to stretch my leg. **legs**
   2 We’ve had to make up for losing time.
   3 I’ve been trying to catch the nurse’s eyes for ages.
   4 Could you lend me an arm with this suitcase?
   5 I think we’re going round in a circle.
   6 It’s late – I’d better do a move.
   7 We’ve been on the going since 7 o’clock this morning.
   8 My brother is sleeping the night at my uncle’s house.
   9 She couldn’t keep her face straight.
   10 When did you learn to say the time?
   11 I need some ideas. Could I pick your mind for a few minutes?

2 Is the speaker pleased, annoyed, or could it be either? Write P, A, or E.
   1 We made up for lost time. **P**
   2 I managed to pick her brains. **A**
   3 He completely missed the point. **E**
   4 I think I caught the sun today. **A**

3 Answer the questions.
   1 Why would you pick someone’s brains?
   2 If you have a thing about beards, what do you feel?
   3 What do you start doing if you can’t keep a straight face?
   4 If someone lays the table, what do they do?
   5 If you’ve been on the go, what’s been happening?
   6 What are you doing if you speak your mind?
   7 What happens if you catch the sun?
   8 What happens if you miss the point?

4 Complete the missing verb in each sentence, in the correct form.
   1 Don’t worry; if you miss the last train, you can always **lay** the night with us.
   2 It was so funny, I couldn’t **keep** a straight face.
   3 Do you think you could **help** me a hand with the housework?
   4 I was trying to **catch** the teacher’s eye, but she was very busy.
   5 He **lay** the table while I was cooking.
   6 I did explain it carefully, but I’m afraid he **miss** the point.
   7 The train leaves in twenty minutes – we ought to **catch** a move or we’ll miss it.
   8 I don’t often **miss** my mind, but I was just so angry.
   9 He went outside to **catch** his legs.
   10 I think you’ve **miss** the sun on the back of your neck.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers in your notebook, or ask another student.
   1 Who lays the table in your home, and why?
   2 Do you catch the sun easily?
   3 Do you have a thing about anything in particular? If so, what?
   4 Do you generally speak your mind?
   5 When did you last stay the night at a friend’s place?
   6 Do people ever pick your brains? If so, what about?
A Positive idioms with get

Get through
First Certificate:
five practice tests

Get over
a broken marriage
and live again

Get rid of
your bad habits –
and get on with your life!

Walking in the BLACK FOREST
where to get away from it all

How to get ahead in business
in ten easy steps

Get into
ADVERTISING
- get the upper hand today!

Glossary

generate sth get away from it all
get the hang of sth
get ahead
get over sth
get into sth
get the most of sth
get rid of sth
get on with your life
get the upper hand

reach a good enough standard to pass a test.

be successful and do better than other people in a career.

feel normal again after having an unpleasant experience, e.g. an illness or a divorce.

start a career in a particular profession.

get the maximum benefit or pleasure from sth (also get sth / a lot out of sth).

take action so that you no longer have sth that you do not want.

stop worrying about sth that has happened and start living a normal life again.

gain an advantage over sb so that you are in control of a situation.

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

> I wasn’t expecting to get through the exam, but I did.

1 Stop worrying and just get on your life – you’re only 21!

2 You need to get the hang when your business is under attack.

3 I can’t get the hang of making chips; mine are always too greasy.

4 After months of hard work, she just wanted to get away from all.

5 My brother showed me how to get the most of my computer.

6 What’s the best way to get all the rats?

2 Complete these book titles with a suitable verb from above.

1 Ten things you never learned at college: how to get ahead in business and beat your rivals

2 101 ways to get rid of your ex-boyfriend

3 A handbook for junior doctors: how to get the most of the exams

4 How to get the hang of a career in TV

5 What to do when your enemy gets away

6 Calling all slimmers! How to get to that fat stomach!

7 Healthy escapes: how to get it all by the Red Sea

8 Manage your stress and get on with your life
B Relationships with get

I've got a cousin who's getting on for forty, but I only got to know him quite recently. We get along really well, though, and now we get together regularly for a chat.

I've got a cousin who is getting along really well in his business and earning lots of money, whereas I find it quite hard to get by on my salary. He tells me I should get out of teaching and work for him.

My cousin's a nightmare. He always got his own way as a child, and then later he got mixed up with a gang and ended up in prison.

Glossary

be getting on for ... be nearly a particular age, time, or number.
get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.
get together (with sb) meet sb socially or in order to discuss sth.
get by have enough money to buy what you need, but no more.
get out of sth stop doing sth or being involved in sth.
get your own way get or do what you want, although other people may want sth different.
get mixed up with sb INF become involved with sb who is a bad influence on you
(also get mixed up in sth).

spotlight get on, get along

Both get on and get along can be used with these meanings. Get on is more common.
1 We get on/along well. = have a friendly relationship. Also get on/along with sb, e.g.
   I get on/along with her very well.
2 He's getting on/along well at school. = making good progress.

3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

   1 Did you and Zoe get on? D
   2 How did he get mixed up with them? D
   3 He always gets his own way. S
   4 We often get together in town. D
   5 She gets by on $10 a day. D
   6 I got to know Sam last year. S
   7 My grandmother's getting on for sixty. S
   8 How did you get on with her? D

4 Complete the questions. (You will answer them in Exercise 5.)

   1 How did you get to your best friend? S
   2 How often do you get with all your relatives for a meal? D
   3 How are you getting in your career or with your studies? S
   4 Do you get your own most of the time, or do you give in to others? D
   5 Who do you get with best in your family? Why? S
   6 Have you ever got mixed in something and then regretted it? If so, what? D

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
I can use key verbs: take and look

A Take

FORUM Do you hate your boss?

- I've got a Liverpool accent, and my boss is always taking me off in front of my colleagues. My dad says, 'Just take no notice of him', but it really upsets me.

- I asked my boss if I could take a day off to go to a funeral. She just screamed 'NO-O-O-O!'. I was really taken aback.

- Anyone who disagrees with my boss is taking his life in his hands. He just goes mad. One day when he was really angry with me, I told him to take it easy. What a mistake.

- When my boss told me he was cutting my salary by 15 per cent, I protested. He just said, 'Take it or leave it'. I wasn't going to take that lying down, so I rang my lawyer.

- He took against me the minute we met. But I'm not worried; I can take care of myself.

Glossary

take sb off  copy the way sb speaks or behaves, to entertain people.
take (no) notice of sb  pay (no) attention to what sb says.
take (time) off  have a particular amount of time away from work.
be taken aback  be shocked or surprised.
take your life in your hands  put yourself in danger (usually of death; in this example, the speaker is joking).
take it easy  INF used to tell sb not to be angry or worried.
take it or leave it  used to say that you do not care if sb accepts your offer or not.
not take sth lying down  not accept a bad situation without a fight or protest.
take against sb  INF begin to dislike sb, often without a good reason.
take care of yourself  If you can take care of yourself, you don't need anybody else to protect you.

1 Cross out one wrong word. Write the correct word at the end.

- As usual, she took no notice to what I said. of
1 It's your decision: you can take it and leave it.
2 He's strong; he knows how to take care for himself.
3 She was really upset, so I told her to take her easy.
4 You need to be careful. You might be taking your live in your hands.
5 They said we weren't needed any more. I was really taken back.
6 The government decision is wrong, and we won't make it lying down.
7 I don't know why he took again her, but she was really upset about it.
8 I asked my boss for a few days of because my daughter was ill.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Just relax and calm down. EASY
2 He put himself in a dangerous situation. LIFE
3 He copies the way his boss speaks. OFF
4 I was really shocked by the job cuts. ABACK
5 She's experienced and can protect herself. CARE
6 She wasn't at work today because she was ill. OFF
### B  Look

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>What kind of person are you?</strong></th>
<th><strong>About you</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>look back on</strong> your childhood as the happiest time of your life?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>look on the bright side</strong> when you’re in a difficult situation?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>look up to</strong> people who are in positions of power?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>look out for</strong> other people when they need help?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you <strong>look the other way</strong> if you saw someone stealing from a shop?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you <strong>look people in the eye</strong> and tell them the truth all the time?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do other people often <strong>look to</strong> you for advice?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you always try to <strong>look your best</strong> when you go out?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>look young for your age</strong>?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

- **look back on sth**: think about sth in your past.
- **look on the bright side**: be cheerful or positive about a bad situation.
- **look up to sb**: respect and admire sb. OPP **look down on sb**.
- **look out for sb**: take care of sb and make sure they are treated well.
- **look the other way**: ignore sth bad that is happening and not try to stop it.
- **look sb in the eye**: look straight at sb, especially to show that you are being honest.
- **look to sb**: hope or expect to get help, advice, etc. from sb.
- **look your best**: look as attractive as possible.
- **look young for your age**: look as though you are younger than you really are.

### 3 Complete the phrases.

1. look **out** your friend
2. look **best**
3. look young for your
4. look up **someone**
5. look on the **side**
6. look someone in the
7. look **on your childhood**
8. look **someone for advice**
9. look the other
10. look **on someone you don’t respect**

### 4 Complete the dialogues using the phrases from Exercise 3 in the correct form.

1. I don’t think he’s telling the truth. ~ No, he couldn’t look
2. Mandy’s a very positive person. ~ Yes, she always looks
3. I’ll get my hair cut before my interview. ~ Good, you need to look
4. They don’t show Bill any respect. ~ No, they look
5. You think a great deal of your mother, don’t you? ~ Yes, I really look
6. Do you know, that man is nearly 40. ~ I don’t believe it! He looks
7. People are suffering in the cold. ~ Yes, and the government is just looking
8. Does he ask his father if he needs help? ~ Yes, he always looks

### 5 ABOUT YOU
Write your answers to the questionnaire, or talk to another student.
60 I can use key verbs: come and go

A Come

What's all that noise? ~ It's the new neighbours—they've been coming and going all day.
Why is she so good at Arabic? ~ I don't know; it just comes naturally to her.
How did the accident happen? ~ I don't know. When I came to, I was in hospital.
How's your dancing coming along? ~ Quite well, actually—I feel I've come a long way.
Was it a good match? ~ Well, it was a bit dull to start with, but it came to life in the second half.
I see they're buying a flat. ~ Yes, they recently came into a lot of money.
He had so many plans and ambitions. ~ Yes, how sad that they all came to nothing.
How did he die? ~ It's a mystery, but I'm sure the truth will come out eventually.

Glossary

come and go arrive at a place and then leave it, repeatedly.
come naturally to sb be natural and easy for sb to do.
come to become conscious again. SYN come round. OPP pass out.
come along improve or develop in the way that you want. SYN come on.
come a long way improve a lot or make a lot of progress.
come to life start to become exciting and lively.
come into sth If you come into money, it becomes yours when sb dies, especially a relative.
come to nothing be unsuccessful or have no successful result.

come out

spotlight come out

Come out has several meanings:
1 The true story came out at the trial. = became known (as above).
2 The book comes out next week. = becomes available to buy or see (also used of films, CDs, etc.).
3 After the rain, the sun came out. = appeared.

1 Circle the correct answer.
1 If a CD comes out, it is unsuccessful | available in the shops.
2 If someone comes to, they become conscious | unconscious.
3 If skiing comes naturally to you, you find it easy to do | think it is a natural activity.
4 If you come into money, you win it | receive it from someone who has died.
5 If a plan comes to nothing, it costs you nothing | doesn't succeed.
6 If a story comes to life, it becomes exciting | seems realistic.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.
1 They're moving house, so they'll be coming and over the next few days.
2 She's worked very hard at skating, and she's certainly come a way.
3 When the news finally came, nobody could believe it.
4 After the operation, it was an hour before he finally came and started talking.
5 Imagine it: a warm evening, music, and then the moon came—it was so romantic!
6 The pain was terrible—so bad that I out. When I came round, I was on the floor.
7 If I ever come any money, I'm going to give it all away.
8 Our vegetable garden is coming well, and we'll soon be eating salad and beans.
B Go

If everything goes according to plan, I’ll go down to Brighton to stay with friends.

My wife usually decides what we do, and I just go along with it.

Dad wants to take us bowling, and whatever he says goes.

What are your plans for this weekend?

I’ve only got £20, and that won’t go far...

My friend’s been going through a bad time, so I’m going round to his place to see him.

I think I’m going down with flu – I’ll probably stay in.

I’m supposed to be going out with my boyfriend, but he never rings me. I hope he hasn’t gone off me.

Glossary

go according to plan happen in the way that you intend.
go down/up to somewhere go to a place further south/north from where you are.
go along with sth agree to do sth that sb else wants to do or wants you to do.
what/whatever sb says goes used for saying that a particular person has the power to decide what happens in a situation.

not go far used for saying that you can’t buy very much with a particular amount of money.
go through sth experience sth difficult or unpleasant.
go round (to …) visit sb or go to a place that is near.
go down with sth become sick or ill with sth.
go out (with sb) spend time with sb and have a romantic relationship with them.
go off sb/sth stop liking sb/sth that you liked in the past.

3 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1. Marcia’s started going out a. to the coast at the weekend.
2. I used to like pasta, but I’ve gone b. goes.
3. Things didn’t go according c. down with something.
4. I’m hoping to go down d. far these days.
5. I feel awful; I must be going e. along with it.
6. She’s very dominant; whatever she says f. off it recently.
7. The money I earn doesn’t go g. with my brother.
8. Joe suggested the plan and we just went h. to plan.

4 Complete the sentences.

1. Things are better now, but I went a bad time last summer.
2. If I’m not busy on Sunday, I might go b. to my friend’s for a chat.
3. If everything goes c. to plan, I’ll be going abroad this summer.
4. I might go d. to the north coast later this month.
5. How long has Alice been going e. with Gareth?
6. I usually go f. with whatever my friends want to do at the weekends.
7. $20 doesn’t go g. if you’re going out for the evening where I live.
8. I used to love staying out late, but as I’ve got older, I’ve gone h. it.
Review: Language

Unit 53

1 Are these link words talking about time, making a contrast, or giving extra information? Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIME</th>
<th>CONTRAST</th>
<th>EXTRA INFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- on the other hand
- as well
- at last
- even if
- ever since
- in spite of
- in addition
- as soon as
- in the meantime

2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.
   1 I ordered a sandwich and ____________ as well.
   2 On the one hand, living alone means you can do what you like, but on the other, ____________.
   3 They only met in the summer, but they’re obviously in love with each other. It looks as if ____________ next year.
   4 Even if ____________ , I still don’t think he’ll pass his exams.
   5 I’ll telephone you as soon as ____________ .
   6 She remained quite cheerful in spite of ____________ .
   7 We waited and waited, and at last ____________ .
   8 He’s been very unhappy ever since ____________ .

Unit 54

1 Complete the sentences below using phrases from the table. You will find them by moving horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

- BRIGHT
- AND
- AND
- THEN
- PEACE
- AND
- GIVE
- EARLY
- NOW
- SICK
- WARM
- QUIET
- OR
- UP
- AND
- AND
- LOVELY
- TAKE
- LATER
- DOWN
- TIRED
- AND
- FORWARDS
- AND
- SOONER
- OR
- WORD
- FOR
- WORD
- BACKWARDS

- I went for a swim and the water was ____________ and ____________ .
- She’s sure to find out the truth of the matter ____________.
- My boss complains all the time. I’m ____________ of listening to him!
- I looked ____________ the road, but I couldn’t see the car.
- We spent the morning going ____________ to the shops.
- I only meet him ____________ , usually at his mother’s.
- She repeated what the policeman had told her ____________ .
- The plane tickets cost about $400, ____________ a few dollars.
- We got up ____________ today, ready for our long journey.
- My life is so stressful! I just need some ____________.
Unit 55

1 Write the words below in the correct column.

- theory
- mistake
- accident
- writing
- purpose
- length
- certain
- duty
- once
- the phone
- sure
- return of
- post
- season

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IN</th>
<th>ON</th>
<th>AT</th>
<th>BY</th>
<th>FOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase using words from the box.

- duty
- length
- certain
- purpose
- end
- order
- mind
- control
- tune

- We knew without any doubt who was responsible. for certain
- The child was running around wildly.
- He didn’t break the mirror intentionally.
- She was singing all the wrong notes.
- That policeman is not working today.
- The coffee machine’s not working.
- Finally, we got to the theatre.
- He spoke about the situation for a long time.
- I’ve got a lot of things that I’m thinking about.

Unit 56

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals and making any necessary changes. The meaning must stay the same.

- What time do you leave work tonight? OFF what time do you get off work tonight?
- Have you completed the application form? FILL
- I collected my dry cleaning at 4.00. UP
- She applied to university but she wasn’t successful. IN
- Hurry up; we’re going to be late. COME
- She is making good progress with her painting. COME
- Do you know when the train arrives? GET
- The pain in my leg has disappeared. GO
- I wrote it in my address book. PUT
- Could you wait a couple of minutes? ON
- Don’t stand on that chair! OFF
Unit 57

1 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right in the correct form.

lay catch speak be
give keep make tell
time go move mind
face sun hand table

1 The dinner's nearly ready - could you ___________ the ___________, please?
2 The little boy was playing his violin so badly; it was hard to ___________ a straight ___________.
3 She's been on the beach for hours; she's really ___________ the ___________.
4 It's nearly midnight, so I'd better ___________ a ___________. I've got a busy day tomorrow.
5 She's really tired. I think she's ___________ on the ___________ since six this morning.
6 We need to move the bookcase. Could you ___________ me a ___________ with it?
7 On some websites you are able to ___________ your ___________ and really say what you think about important issues.
8 I didn't learn to ___________ the ___________ until I was about seven.

2 Circle the correct word.

1 go round in circles = work hard at something without making mistakes | progress.
2 pick sb's brain = ask someone questions because you want to get to know them | find out information.
3 make up for lost time = do something quickly | slowly because you couldn't do it before | have plenty of time.
4 catch sb's eye = look sb in the eye | make somebody look at you.
5 miss the point = not understand | hear the main part of what someone is saying.
6 stretch your legs = move your legs | go for a short walk after sitting for some time.

Unit 58

1 Replace the underlined parts of the sentences using a phrasal verb with get, and any other words that are necessary to keep the meaning the same.

▶ I'd like to stop being in the army. I'd like to get out of the army.
1 They have a good relationship.
2 I'm sure he's good enough to pass the exam.
3 It took her some time to recover from the shock.
4 I don't know how she started a career in journalism.
5 We often meet socially for a coffee in the morning.
6 She can't manage financially on £100 a week.
7 I think he benefited a lot from the course.
8 I think she's making good progress.

2 Complete the definitions of these idioms and phrasal verbs, then underline the full idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 If it is getting on for midnight, it is ___________ midnight.
2 If you get the upper hand, you gain an ___________ over somebody.
3 If you get ahead in your career, you are ___________.
4 If you get your own way, you do what ___________.
5 If you get the hang of something, you ___________ it.
6 If you get mixed up in something, you become involved in something which is ___________.
Unit 59

1 Are the sentences positive or negative? Write P or N.
1 Mike always looks on the bright side. P
2 Alain looks down on his neighbours. N
3 Daisy can’t look you in the eye. N
4 Rebecca looks out for people. P
5 Rafa takes against people. N
6 Jorge looks up to his parents. P
7 Joe won’t take things lying down. N
8 You take your life in your hands when David’s driving. P

2 Replace the underlined parts of the sentence using an idiom or phrasal verb with take or look.
► She pays no attention to anything he says. takes no notice of
1 I often think about the past.
2 Just calm down and relax.
3 She appears much younger than she is.
4 He has always respected and admired her grandfather.
5 I was really shocked and surprised when she said that.
6 Whenever there’s a problem, he just pretends not to see it.

Unit 60

1 Circle the correct answer.
1 I’m happy to come | go along with whatever my sister decides.
2 Alex lost his job, and then he was ill. He’s been going | coming through a bad time.
3 I used to like Sean, but I’ve come | gone off him because he’s been horrible to my sister.
4 My brother will make the final decision. Whatever he says, comes | goes.
5 My cousin Leila is good at all ball games: they just come | go naturally to her.
6 Margaret Compton’s latest book comes | goes out next month.

2 Complete the crossword. All the answers are idioms or phrasal verbs with come or go. The letters in the grey squares spell another phrasal verb. What is it?

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 When the sun , it appears from behind a cloud. (5,3)
2 I’m planning to to see my neighbour this evening. (2,5)
3 She fainted, and it was a few minutes before she finally . (4,2)
4 After his father died, he a lot of money. (4,4)
5 You’ve made so much progress with your English – you’ve really . (4,1,4,3)
6 The show was boring at first, but it when the dancers came on. (4,2,4)
7 We were hoping to see Rome and Venice, but things didn’t plan. (2,9)
8 All his dreams of starting a business sadly in the end. (4,2,7)
9 €10 doesn’t in an expensive city like Paris. (2,3)
Idioms – some interesting histories

How did English idioms come into use? Here we show the meanings behind some idioms, and how some of them developed. Look at our website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more.

a stone's throw (Unit 2)
A stone's throw is the distance that you can throw a stone – in other words, only a short distance from where you are standing.

be over the moon (Unit 27)
In early use, the idiom was to ‘jump’ over the moon. It spread because of its use in the children's nursery rhyme (= poem):
Hey, diddle, diddle,
The cat and the fiddle,
The cow jumped over the moon.
It means, be extremely happy about something.

in the red / in the black (Unit 33)
In bank accounts, if you owed money (i.e. you were in debit), the amount was written in red ink; amounts of money actually in your account were written in black.

on the dot (Unit 49)
On the dot refers to a traditional clock face. The minutes are marked as dots, which the minute hand covers as it moves round the clock.

once in a blue moon (Units 3, 49)
The moon is obviously not blue, and it rarely looks blue; this phrase suggests that if something happens once in a blue moon, it rarely or never happens.

show sb the ropes (Unit 24)
In the past, sailing ships had many ropes of different kinds, and sailors had to learn how to handle them. If someone shows you the ropes, they teach you a skill or show you how something is done.

brush sth up / brush up on sth (Unit 9)
You could improve the appearance of something like a silk hat or a woollen coat by brushing it. Nowadays, the idiom expresses the idea of improving a skill that you have not used for a long time, e.g. speaking a foreign language.

catch sb red-handed (Unit 35)
If someone was caught red-handed, they had blood on their hands after murdering someone or poaching (= killing birds and animals illegally on another person’s land). Nowadays if someone is caught red-handed, they have been caught while doing something wrong or illegal.

start from scratch (Unit 48)
The origin of this phrase is to do with sport. People used to scratch a line on the ground as the starting point of a race, or to show where boxers had to stand at the beginning of a match. It now means to start something again from the beginning, probably because the previous work you did on it was no use.
Answer key

Unit 1

1
1 Both are correct. 4 Both are correct.
2 on 5 in the distance
3 lose face 6 bell

2
1 He was in a terrible state
2 How on earth is your sister
3 makes a lot of sense
4 every day without fail
5 we ran like mad
6 situation, but if all else fails he can

3
1 steer 4 out of the blue
2 flat out 5 in the distance
3 That 6 lose face

4
1 fail (without fail)
2 bell (rings a bell)
3 sense (makes a lot of sense)
4 eye (turn a blind eye)
5 state (was in a terrible state)
6 come (How come?)

5
1 be unable to decide what you think about sth,
or whether to do sth or not
2 after a period of time
3 be lucky that
4 amusing and fun to be with
5 have a lot of money

Unit 2

1
1 never 3 off 5 words
2 bright 4 charge 6 advantage

2
1 through 4 supposed/meant
2 case 5 less
3 throw 6 mind

3
1 getting nowhere 4 thank heavens
2 A piece of cake. 5 get through to
3 Don't ask me. / Search me. 6 stone's throw

4
1 Type 5 (trial and error a way of solving a problem by trying several possibilities and learning from your mistakes; see also Unit 9.)
2 Type 6 (live on sth have a particular amount of money to buy the things you need to live.)
3 Type 7 (Good grief! used to express surprise, shock, or annoyance; see also Unit 19.)
4 Type 2 (in the main mostly; in general.)
5 Type 1 (find your feet if you find your feet, you become confident in a new situation, especially one that is difficult to start with.)
6 Type 3 (a fact of life something difficult or unpleasant that cannot be changed and that you have to accept.)

5
making fun of swap places (with) Get lost
No way! a pain in the neck
gets on my nerves go away

6
Spoken phrase
No way! = definitely not.
Get lost! a rude way of telling someone to go away.

Verb-based idiom
make fun of sb laugh at sb or make others laugh at them, usually in an unkind way; see also Unit 22.
swap places (with sb) take sb's seat or position so they can take yours; see also Unit 8.
get on sb's nerves annoy sb.

Noun phrase
a pain in the neck INF a person or thing that you find annoying.

Phrasal verb
go away used to tell sb to leave a place or person; see also Unit 56.

Unit 3

1
These answers are based on the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary.
1 moment 4 early 7 thing
2 catch 5 just
3 breath 6 public
3  I didn’t know the answer, so I made something up.
4  The train’s coming in on platform five.
5  We can cut back on the electricity we use.
6  What do the letters FAQ stand for?
7  I had to look up the meaning (in a dictionary), or look the meaning up.
8  Our meeting was at 5.00, but Sue never showed up.

5  rub sth out (transitive, separable) e.g. I made a mistake, so I rubbed it out.
go in for sth (transitive, inseparable) e.g. She went in for the Stage 5 piano exam.
settle down (intransitive, inseparable) e.g. They want to get married and settle down.
take after sb (transitive, inseparable) e.g. I take after my father. We’re both very talkative.
take sth back (transitive, separable) e.g. The watch didn’t work, so I took it back.
fall out with sb (transitive, inseparable) e.g. I fell out with him because he told me a lie.

Unit 5

1  The correct sentences are: 1, 3, 4, 5, 8.

2  1 the police are looking into it at the moment
2 I’m sure he just made it up.
3 Correct.
4 Who looks after it when you go on holiday
5 Correct.
6 I came across it yesterday on the Internet
7 If you try it on and it’s too big
8 Correct.

3  1 You can check in at 5.00.
2 Could you look up the number? Or Could you look the number up?
3 I’m looking after my friend’s daughter today.
4 He’s going out with David’s sister.
5 CNN stands for Cable News Network.
6 Would you like to try this skirt on? Or Would you like to try on this skirt?

4  1 She wasn’t happy, but now things are looking up.
2 The committee looked into the cause of the problem.

Unit 6

1  1 b 2 e 3 h 4 c 5 d 6 a 7 f 8 g

2  1 clear (‘tidy’ is also possible)
2 flicked (‘looked’ is also possible)
3 used
4 goes
5 tidy ('clear' is also possible)
6 live
7 Drink
8 slept

3 Answers from a Czech person.
1 Yes, we always go through homework in class.
2 I'm afraid I can't remember when I last tidied up
   my bedroom!
3 Yes, I do often sleep through the alarm clock.
4 Yes, of course I do.
5 No, as I consider it rather impolite.

4
1 took, sent  4 get
2 ring, phone  5 gave, took
3 take, bring, put  6 sent, took

5
1 took
2 ring/phone/call
3 pay
4 get
5 brought
6 got
7 get
8 bring/give

Unit 7

1
1 about five kilos / a lot of weight
2 fire alarm / car alarm
3 All are possible.
4 shoes/jacket
5 All are possible.

2
1 I see Beverley's got on a few kilos again put
2 Could you put the lights down on
3 I hope they turn out up
4 We've decided to make the living room up do
5 She was tidied up this week tied
6 I broke away and cried down
7 They tied me out up
8 I can't do it on up

3
1 went
2 came
3 put
4 turned up
5 do up
6 going up

4
1 turn up
2 do up
3 going up

5
1 go
2 put
3 broke
4 do
5 turn
6 going

6 Answers from a New Zealander.
1 We live in a quiet cul-de-sac and never hear car
   alarms going off.
2 I put on weight during the winter months
   because it's too cold to go for walks.
3 Once our car broke down at about 10.30 p.m.
   We rang the AA [Automobile Association] and
   had to wait half an hour before they came and
   towed us to the nearest garage.
4 Our home is only 10 years old, but we've
   started doing it up. So far the ceiling has been
   painted.
5 If I'm late for class (which is very rare), my
   students get on with some work or use the time
   for group discussion.
6 Petrol prices are going up, and that affects the
   prices of everything else.

Unit 8

1
call it a day
swap places
take it in turns

1 go over something
2 hand something out

2
1 all
2 give/hand
3 over/through

3
1 places
2 away
3 turns
4 day
5 out
6 round

4
1 cross it off out
2 top of the iceberg tip
3 no use to study grammar studying
4 My brother's in home at
5 it's not good no
6 get back to the beginning go

5
1 rough
2 iceberg
3 crossed

6 Answers from a British person.
1 When I was studying French I took it very
   seriously.
2 Yes, it's good to look up words you don't know.
   But it's also good to see if you can work them
   out from the context.
3 Now students can prepare their written work on their computers, which is quicker than writing it in rough first.
4 I agree. But it's easy to forget to look back at your notebook.
5 Yes, it's always good to practise speaking with your classmates to build up your confidence.
6 Yes, what you learn in class is only the tip of the iceberg. You go on learning all your life.

Unit 9

1 make myself understood
2 I'll get there eventually
3 got behind with his studies
4 make the most of it
5 now I have to catch up with
6 list of dos and don'ts

2
1 make 3 loud 5 get 7 stick
2 heart 4 make 6 error 8 given

3 Answers from a Greek person.
1 I usually make myself understood in English.
2 I've tried to learn phrasal verbs and idioms by heart.
3 I sometimes say words out loud to remember them.
4 I always try to make the most of my time in class.
5 I sometimes get behind with my studies.
6 Trial and error is a good learning method.
7 I generally stick at everything I start.
8 I haven't given up a course.
Best piece of advice: Don't be embarrassed about speaking: the main thing is to make yourself understood.

4 rack your brains
keep your mind on something
go in one ear and out the other
on the tip of my tongue
make sense of something
keep it up

5
1 on, tongue
2 rack
3 keep
4 ear, other
5 pick
6 make
7 in

8 up
9 come

6 Answers from a Brazilian person.
I often find that I have words on the tip of my tongue when I've slept badly and I'm tired.
I'm quite good at languages and I can usually pick things up quite quickly, above all when reading foreign magazines and novels.
I need to brush up on difficult English phrasal verbs; if I don't use them I tend to forget them.

Unit 10

1 I must get to the grips with this.
2 You can only do to your best.
3 Keep both your fingers crossed!
4 I did it up to the best of my ability.
5 Best of the luck!
6 He works it out answers to problems.

2
1 get 4 over/through 7 top
2 ability 5 come 8 world
3 bogged 6 habit

3 Answers from a Czech person.
I have to get down to studying in the evening because I'm a distance student, and I'm at work during the day.
I always try to do my best.
Sometimes I do get bogged down in details when I'm learning something new.
I go through my notes shortly before an exam; it isn't as time-consuming as reading a textbook.
It's impossible to guess which topics will come up in an exam; there are usually about a hundred of them for each exam at our university.
If you don't get into the habit of studying regularly, you probably won't be able to pass all the necessary exams before the end of a term.
Feel enthusiasm - I can easily get on top of subjects I like.
I never feel it'll be the end of the world if I fail an exam because I can try each exam three times.

4
1 stayed
2 Both are correct.
3 blank
4 eye
5 read
6 stuck, both are correct.
Unit 11

1. foot 3. worst 5. earlier
2. compare 4. best 6. on

2. She will go far in her career.
   1. She was in my element at university.
   2. She came up with some good ideas.
   3. He sat back and did nothing.
   4. Why did she drop out of college?
   5. It went from bad to worse.

3. comparison (By comparison)
   1. early (it's early days)
   2. up (it's not up to much)
   3. dropped (dropped out)
   4. thinking (thinking on his feet)
   5. better (be better off)

4. start off / get off 5. bring out
   1. know 6. think
   2. do 7. pull

Unit 12

1. think straight 4. think back
2. think ahead 5. think twice
3. think for himself 6. think it over

2. over/through 5. mind
2. back 6. yourself
3. over 7. spur
4. straight 8. twice

Answers from a Czech person.
No. I like to think ahead.
It's sometimes good to accept other people's opinions, but I mostly prefer thinking for myself.
I like to solve my problems on my own, but I sometimes consult my close friends.
I try to avoid doing things on the spur of the moment.
That's right. I always tend to start panicking.
Yes, I always think twice before doing anything important.
I hardly ever think back to my time at primary school.

Unit 13

1. I'm a bit out of the practice these days.
2. She's doing what she's doing.
3. Would you like to give it a try?
4. Are you any good at making things?
5. I'm much good at maths.
6. I meant to do it but it slipped out of my mind.
7. She knew it like the back of her hand.
8. Are you any good with for electrical things?

2. with 4. back 7 hang
2. head 5. good, give 8 out
3. in 6. mind

3. Answers from a New Zealander.
I'm good with my hands, especially making and fixing things, e.g. sewing, basic furniture repairs, etc.
2 I've got a good head for figures. Maths was my best subject at high school.
3 I used to be able to take in a lot of factual information but the older I get the less I remember.
4 I know Christchurch like the back of my hand. It's a great place to live and work.
5 I'm pretty good at cooking Kiwi food, but I also love giving Asian food a try.
6 I remember most of my family's birthdays.
7 It must be easier to get the hang of it if they have a good instructor.
8 Yes, I cycle a lot, and so I never get out of practice.

Unit 14

1 in 4 from
2 broke 5 Both are correct.
3 Both are correct. 6 line

2 quiet (keep quiet about it)
2 kept (kept him in the dark)
3 touch (got in touch with)
4 broke (broke the news)
5 knowledge (it's common knowledge)
6 hold (get hold of), gave (gave her a ring)

3 Answers from a Norwegian person.
1 I'm a phone person. I use email occasionally, and I only use texting when something is really urgent.
2 I usually give people a ring to thank them. I try to drop them a line as well, because that's what I was taught to do as a child, but I sometimes forget.
3 Quite frequently.
4 Sometimes a lot, sometimes less. I ring friends and family abroad about once a month, but email is a good way to keep in touch with friends abroad.
5 Yes, they do! Mainly because we've moved house a lot. But when I got married, I kept my surname as my middle name, before my husband's surname, as a way for people to be able to find me.

Unit 15

1 U 2 H 3 U 4 H 5 U 6 U 7 U 8 U

2 speak 4 face, back 7 across
2 talk 5 mind 8 edgeways
3 foot 6 told

3 Answers from a Syrian person.
1 Yes, I do if the teacher is friendly enough.
2 No, there isn't.
3 No, I haven't as far as I remember.
4 I prefer the former as long as it's objective and not too personal.
5 No, I wouldn't. I tend to be reserved in such situations.
6 No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I sometimes do. It happens when I don't know the exact vocabulary.
8 Yes, it is with some people – those who I consider to be egocentric.

Unit 16

1 hung up 4 Both are correct.
2 got cut off 5 Both are correct.
3 get 6 top

2 line (hold the line), through (put you through)
2 charge (charge it up)
3 get (get through to), on (hung up on)
4 hang/hold (hang/hold on), fortune (costing a fortune), up (hung up)
5 off (got cut off)
6 back (get back to)

3 Answers from an Italian person.
1 It happened when I was having an interesting conversation on my mobile and I was a bit annoyed.
2 I have to top up my mobile two or three times a year.
3 Yes, I have. It usually happens when someone phones me to try to advertise their products and sell them to me.
4 No, luckily I don't have that problem.

Unit 17

1 up 5 Hurry 9 up
2 come 6 usual/always 10 Guess
3 not 7 of
4 know 8 when
2
1 Hurry up!  5 What's up?
2 Say when.  6 Here goes.
3 Time's up.  7 All the best.
4 Guess what?  8 Here you are.

3
1 Kind of.
2 as usual
3 there you are / there you go
4 What's up?
5 It's up to you.
6 all the best

4
1 Time's up.  3 Say when.
2 Here goes!  4 Here's to

Unit 18

1
1 Tell  5 telling  9 tell
told  6 say  10 say
3 say  7 say
4 say  8 tell

2
1 say that again  6 tell you
2 whatever you  7 say no
3 you so  8 you the truth
4 say the least  9 to say
5 Tell, rather not say  10 be telling

3
1 I'll see that I can do I'll see what I can do
2 seeing you! see you
3 let's me see let's see or let's me see let me see
4 see yourself see for yourself
5 I don't see why no I don't see why not.
6 see how a thing goes see how things go

4
1 see why not  5 let's see / let me see
2 for yourself  6 it goes / things go
3 see you  7 see what I can do
4 'll see  8 you see

Unit 20

1
1 let get  4 cut put  7 dove love
tbash dash  5 bet get  8 day way
3 ill all  6 hot got

2
1 cropped  6 by
2 on  7 love/ regards
3 together  8 get
4 Remember  9 something
5 after  10 regards/ love

3
1 away  4 pop, about
2 back  5 up, wait
3 earliest  6 call/drop

4
1 What's she been up to recently?
2 Meet me at 5.00 at the latest.
3 Could you drop me off at the doctor's?
4 I'll try to get away from work by 7.00.
5 I'm not sure I feel up to it.
6 It's (just) round the corner from where I'm staying.
7 I'm snowed under (with work) at the moment.
8 I'll call by (and see you) on my way home.

5 You're welcome.
6 I'm very / terribly sorry.
7 Yes and no.
8 I'm not bothered.
9 go ahead
10 I beg your pardon?

3
1 none  4 hard luck!
2 Hear! Hear!  5 Both are correct.
3 Both are correct.  6 For goodness sake!

4
1 bad luck! / hard luck!
2 Mind your own business! / That's none of your business!
3 Good luck! / Best of luck!
4 Well done!
5 Good grief! / Good heavens! / Goodness me!
6 Goodness knows!
7 Bless you!
8 Thank goodness!

Unit 19

1
1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S

2
1 Not bad. / Not too bad.
2 same here
3 if you like
4 Never mind.

Answer key 151
Unit 21

1 1 much (don't think much of), be (to be honest)
2 make (make of), concerned (as far as I'm concerned)
3 up (up to a point)
4 point (beside the point)
5 highly / a lot (thinks highly / a lot of), agree (I couldn't agree more)
6 thing (for one thing)

2
1 As far as I'm concerned as
2 For be honest To
3 I don't think more of much
4 think a lot of
5 In the large run long
6 With a doubt Without

3 Answers from a British person.
1 As far as I'm concerned we should learn from the past, in order to avoid the repetition of bad things.
2 It's better if the police don't carry guns, as they can be used in error and can get into the hands of criminals.
3 I agree. We need more efficient trains, and we need more buses in rural areas.
4 I don't agree. People don't seem to think much of him.
5 Yes, in the long run we'll need renewable fuels or energy for cars.
6 We may be dependent on them, but they have advanced our knowledge in a very valuable way.

4
1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

5
1 What are the pros and cons
2 Well, in some ways
3 I know, but even so
4 You've got a point
5 And for the most part
6 Fair enough
7 And the thing is
8 To a certain extent
9 So, if you ask me

Unit 22

1
d 2 a 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 c 7 f 8 e

Unit 23

1
1 f 2 c 3 g 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 e

2
1 nodding his hand head
2 wearing his T-shirt front to back back to front
3 shaking hand hands
4 do out the buttons up
5 knocked me over out
6 fold their hands arms
7 tripped me down up
8 she felt over fell

3
1 knocked 4 front 7 crossed
2 tripped 5 hang 8 away
3 hand 6 tiptoe

4
1 They're shaking hands.
2 She's throwing them away. OR She's throwing away some old magazines.
3 He's blowing his nose.
4 He's wearing his T-shirt inside out. OR He's got his T-shirt on inside out.
5 She's shaking her head.
6 He knocked me out.
7 He's standing on tiptoe.
8 They're holding hands.
Answers from an Argentinian person.
1. Yes, but in Argentina, when you meet a friend, you also kiss him or her on both cheeks.
2. Yes, they do.
3. No, it isn’t. But, if possible, you don’t do it in public.
4. Yes, absolutely.
5. No, women never walk hand in hand in Argentina.
6. No, I haven’t.
7. No, I haven’t.
8. Some sheets of writing paper.

Unit 24

1. in 2 of 3 after 4 in 5 in 6 of
2. out 2 brought 3 runs 4 followed 5 ropes
3. 1 brought 2 take 3 footsteps 4 look 5 runs
4. Answers from a Czech person.
  1. As a child, I was brought up in a small town.
  2. I must take after my elder sister.
  3. I think I would like to follow in my mother’s footsteps.
  4. I particularly look up to my husband.
  5. I’m not aware of a physical characteristic that runs in our family.
5. Why did she burst into tears?
  1. I’ll get my own back on her.
  2. She has given birth to twins.
  3. I often got into trouble at school.
  4. He stayed up late to watch a film. or He stayed up to watch a late film.
  5. He’s grown into a handsome young man.
  6. She is nothing like her brothers.
  7. What have you let yourself in for?
6. up 2 up 3 out 4 blind 5 get 6 back
7. Answers from a New Zealander.
  1. I grew up in Christchurch, New Zealand. We had a big house with six bedrooms, a huge garden, and a goat.
  2. We didn’t have TV when I was young, and we were never allowed to stay up late.
  3. I was allowed to stay out until 10 p.m., which I thought was far too early.
  4. My parents didn’t turn a blind eye because they had no idea what we got up to!
  5. I was always in trouble at school. I used to break all the rules I could, without it getting back to my parents e.g. not wearing my school hat, riding my bike in the school grounds, etc.
  6. I tried to get my own back on one of my sisters and one of my brothers but it didn’t seem to bother them at all.

Unit 25

1. By the whole On
  1. Just leave me lone alone
  2. largely with fault at
  3. In generally general
  4. settled in his ways set
  5. in ease with them at
  6. out from touch of
  7. Who is for blame? to
  2. I feel at ease with Liz and Clive.
  1. Just be yourself.
  2. She’s at fault.
  3. He’s very set in his ways.
  4. Leave me alone.
  6. I’m not good when it comes to numbers.
  7. I’m out of touch with politics now.
  8. Don’t go on about it.
3. can’t get through to him
   1. she got away with it
   2. becoming more and more dangerous
   3. been getting up to
   4. Their’s worlds apart
4. own two feet 4 apart
   1. live 5 offence
   2. the times 6 give in
5. Answers from a British person.
  1. No, my parents never gave in to me.
  2. No, I was regularly given punishments!
  3. I’ve always been able to get through to both my parents and my children.
  4. No, I’m far too old for that!
  5. No, we’ve always understood each other.
Unit 26

1. 1 G 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 G
2. 1 by 4 keep 7 on/along
   2 in, door 5 given 8 hand
   3 ice 6 locked
3. Answers from a Greek person.
   1 I live with my husband.
   2 We work in the same school.
   3 I would make them a cake.
   4 No.
   5 Yes. To school.
   6 No.
   7 The neighbours to the right. We have the same
      interests.
   8 Cooking.
4. It was in full swing by 11.00.
   2 The guests stood around outside.
   3 The party went on all night.
   4 Who turned the music up?
   5 They couldn't put up with the noise.
   6 They ran the risk of upsetting people.
   7 When did it come to an end?
   8 Please let me know if you can come.
5. throw/give/have (throw/give/have a party)
   2 terms (on bad terms)
   3 round (invited some people round)
   4 around (stood around)
   5 let (let us know)
   6 go (go on)
   7 on (what was going on)
   8 down (turned the music down)
   9 end (brought the party to an end)

Unit 27

1. I've got flies in my stomach. butterflies
2. She's about for leave. to
3. He ran out of his skin. jumped
4. He's got something at his mind. on
5. She won't help making mistakes. can't
6. Don't worry, you're on safe hands. in
2. 1 state 3 mind 5 take
   2 can't 4 calm 6 leaf

Unit 28

1. 1 mad about / fallen for
2. come between
3. shoes/place
4. hit it off / fall for each other
5. be Lucy's type / chat Lucy up
6. All are correct.
2. 1 for good
2. thinks the world of
3. my type
4. hit it off
5. put yourself in my shoes/place
6. chatted me up
7. split up / break up
8. mad about / crazy about
3. 1 wrong 4 courage
2. time 5 sight
3. together 6 on
4. 1 love 3 go
2. pluck, out 4 stuck
Answers from a Brazilian person.
1 I don't think so. I believe in attraction at first sight. Love takes time to develop.
2 Yes, I've always found it difficult. And since I have never had good results taking the initiative, I've decided not to do it anymore.
3 That's a tricky one. Maybe because people find they have nothing or little in common, or they lose respect for each other. There are so many possible reasons.
4 No, not many, but I know a few.
5 People smoking near me (I'm allergic), neighbours playing loud music, and people answering mobile phones at the cinema.

Unit 29
1 around 4 over 7 on
2 over 5 show-off 8 fair
3 take 6 on

2
1 showing off
2 all over the place
3 give and take
4 on her own / by herself
5 take that into account
6 over and over again / again and again
7 getting on my nerves
8 messing around/about

3 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

4
1 I love tidying things/everything away.
2 We've had plenty of ups and downs.
3 They all had a good laugh at my expense.
4 Should we put off buying the car?
5 Don't bite my head off!
6 The kids are driving me round the bend.

Answers from a South African person.
I read my horoscope when I happen to see it in a magazine. It's good for a bit of fun, but I don't believe in it for a minute.

Unit 30
1 e 2 g 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 d 8 f

2
1 I can confide in Molly.
2 So far, nobody has arrived.
3 Keep your feet on the ground.
4 If the worst comes to the worst, will you help me?
5 Don't sit around all day. / Don't spend time sitting around all day.
6 He'll soon find his feet in his new job.
7 She kept the news to herself.
8 His heart's not in this project. / His heart isn't in this project.

4
dare said that is true say
it's taken out my life over
based your decision in on
just for funny fun
couldn't stay there no longer any
Come in! on

5
1 know (you never know)
2 true (come true)
3 in (believe in), longer (not any longer)
4 too (life's too short)
5 something (there's something in it)
6 guess (anyone's guess)

Answer from a South African person.
I read my horoscope when I happen to see it in a magazine. It's good for a bit of fun, but I don't believe in it for a minute.

Unit 31
1 1 bright 5 here and there
2 2 chances 6 die out
3 3 out of luck, row 7 pick up
4 4 the most 8 start off

2
1 started
2 make
3 here
4 died

picked/brightened
clauded
out
Unit 32

1
1 drop out drop off
2 wink-a-sleep sleep a wink
3 later nights late nights
4 fall to sleep fall asleep
5 made a lie-in had a lie-in
6 turn and toss toss and turn
7 before the last before last
8 worry sick worried sick

2
1 I didn’t sleep a wink. / I was wide awake all night.
2 I had a lie-in.
3 I was worried sick.
4 I was tossing and turning all night. / I tossed and turned all night.
5 I was wide awake.
6 I managed to drop off (to sleep). / I managed to fall asleep.
7 I slept like a log. / I had a good night.
8 I had an early night.

3
Answers from a Czech person.
1 I always have problems dropping off when travelling by train.
2 No, I had a very good night last night.
3 Yes, I have had three very late nights this week.
4 I hardly ever fall asleep watching television.
5 This morning I had a lie-in. I usually get up late at weekends.
6 Whenever I have problems I toss and turn and cannot fall asleep.
7 If only I could always have such a good sleep as the night before last.
8 I am worried sick, and not only about my English.

Unit 33

1
1 I’m afraid I’m at the red. in
2 I cut back in my spending. on
3 Pay out the money you borrowed. back
4 He’s been on debt for years. in
5 How will he pay over his debts? off
6 Go to the bank and pay the cheque on. in
7 She’s absolutely rolling on money. in
8 You have to save out for it. up

2
1 out 4 well, badly 7 rolling
2 careful 5 hard 8 ends
3 cut 6 off

3
Answers from a New Zealander.
1 I don’t take money out of my account once a week. I use my credit card as much as possible so I can get air points with Air New Zealand.
2 I’m quite careful with my money. I save as much as possible so I can sometimes afford to do special things.
3 I enjoy the challenge of cutting back on my spending from time to time, e.g. seeing how cheaply I can make a delicious meal instead of eating out or getting takeaways.
4 Senior doctors and specialists are well off. Nurses are underpaid and often try to get a pay rise.
5 Some elderly people are hard up, some are well off, but most would be somewhere in between.
6 A lot of young people live with their parents for longer than 18 years because it’s cheaper than renting a flat, and Mum does all the cooking, washing, and cleaning for them.
7 People who are rolling in money have to pay higher taxes, but not enough in comparison with the average person.
8 Lawyers don’t usually have any problem making ends meet.

4
1 the post of the transport cost
2 my honey’s worth money
3 to rub up a huge bill run
4 we got nipped off ripped
5 keep your head above water head
6 ran out on money of
7 it didn’t cost a jenny penny
8 save for a rainy day day

5
1 He runs the café on a shoestring.
2 I didn’t expect him to rip me off like that.
3 Save (your money) for a rainy day.
4 It’s hard to keep my head above water.
5 It didn’t cost a penny.
6 The insurance covered the cost of the hospital.
7 Did you get your money’s worth?
8 I’ve run out of dollars.
Unit 34

1 another 4 burn 7 cut
2 in 5 up 8 go
3 starving 6 go

2 1 on 4 Make
2 were, wouldn't 5 starving, fill
3 Whatever 6 down

3 Answers from a British person.
1 If you want to go on a diet, try to eat lots of fresh fruit and vegetables.
2 If I were you, I wouldn't eat so much cheese.
3 Whatever you do, don't forget to drink lots of water.
4 Make sure you take plenty of exercise.
5 If you're starving, don't fill yourself up with biscuits.
6 Try to cut down on drinks like fizzy lemonade.

4 turn it up 4 rid of it
2 heat it up 5 make use of them
3 come off 6 threw it out

5 Please don't throw out those pears. OR ... throw those pears out.
2 He needs to chop up the onions. OR ... chop the onions up.
3 I couldn't get the olives out of the jar.
4 Could you turn the oven down, please? OR ... turn down the oven, please.
5 I turned the tomatoes into a soup.
6 If it's too hot, let it cool down. OR Let it cool down if it's too hot.

4 The escaped murderer is now behind bars.
5 They let the boy off.
6 She ran away from home to escape from her father.
7 The barman was beaten up by the gang. OR The gang beat up the barman.
8 We looked for the ring in vain. OR We looked in vain for the ring.

4 been getting into trouble
2 been on the lookout
3 one boy broke into
4 he was caught red-handed
5 the police just let him off
6 able to get away with it
7 tricked a resident into letting
8 they then ran off with
9 they are still on the run
10 should be behind bars

Unit 35

1 in 4 on 7 up
2 on 5 into 8 on
3 away 6 away

2 1 run 4 in 7 handed
2 trouble 5 from 8 up
3 vain 6 increase/rise

3 1 Dan will get into trouble for this.
2 He got away with the crime.
3 The police are on the lookout for two thieves.

4 a nine-for-five job nine-to-five
2 give him a sack the
3 checking up against you on
4 deal on lots of banks with
5 hard with it all day at
6 make matters worst worse

5 turned me down
2 handed in her notice
3 taken on
4 gave her the sack
5 checks up / has been checking up
6 cut out

6 Answers from a Brazilian person.
Yes, for some job positions.
Not really. I'm a teacher, so my working hours are quite different.
Yes I have – the last time I quit a job.
My boss does that all the time.
No. I've always worked as a teacher, and I'm really cut out for that.

Unit 37

1
d 2 e 3 b 4 c 5 f 6 a

2
1 we had to take out a loan
2 they think they can make a go of it
3 they sold it as a going concern
4 it could still fall through
5 I decided to take on the job
6 must be out of your mind to lend money to Karl
7 we still have a long way to go
8 got the business up and running
9 it's been turned into a chemist's

3
corners 6 for
2 Both are correct. 6 meet
3 out of 7 up
4 vicious 8 worse

4
1 notice 3 meet 5 worse
2 circle 4 race 6 world

5
dream 4 notice 7 up
2 opt 5 up
3 race 6 ends

Unit 38

1
I didn't get my money back.
They've sold out of milk.
I sent off for a book.
She splashed out on a new coat.
The wine is on special offer.
He wrapped the gift up for me.
I always shop around for bargains.
I got the bike for nothing.

2
1 my money back 5 sent off/away for them
2 rather than 6 on (special) offer
3 on sale 7 shop around
4 splashed out 8 for nothing

3
Answers from a Czech person.
Yes, I have, and I've got it back.
Yes, I do, especially clothes and shoes.
Yes, I do. I prefer to use the Internet to buy electronic gadgets and furniture.
Yes, I browse the Internet first.
No, only when I need them.
It was a year ago. I bought a very nice and very expensive leather jacket.
Yes, it was a huge bunch of flowers in a small shop.
No, never.

Unit 39

1
1 by, round 5 ended
2 pop 6 out
3 ran/bumped 7 tea
4 turned 8 put

2
1 night 3 halves 5 up
2 out 4 corner 6 out

3
Answers from a Norwegian person.
1 I wish I could more often! When my husband is away on business, I take a book to bed for an early night.
2 My husband and I don't eat out often because it's hard to find a babysitter, but we eat out as a family most weekends.
3 Yes, I go halves when I eat out with a friend.
4 Yes, there are several, including a Chinese restaurant.
5 A couple of times a month. We get a lot of family coming to stay with us.
6 When my mum came to stay we went out for a meal; that was about three weeks ago.

4
1 time 4 sardines
2 Both are correct. 5 take
3 into it 6 Both are correct.

5
1 feel 5 keep
2 threw/chucked 6 out
3 asking 7 into
4 jump 8 hands
Answers from an Argentinian person.
1 Sometimes my children ask me little favours, such as driving them to their friends' or buying them a new computer game.
2 No.
3 Yes, a bakery. The first owner retired and sold the shop to a younger couple.
4 No, I am patient and wait for my turn. I get extremely angry when others push in - it's not fair.
5 Yes, some neighbourhoods are more dangerous than others.
6 Nothing much. I plan to relax after a long working day.

Unit 40
1
c 2 d 3 f 4 a 5 e 6 h 7 g 8 b
2
1 up, fall 3 breath, down, keep
2 sudden, turned, Sure
3
1 other people 4 little by little
2 it's hard to learn 5 enter the race
3 out of shape 6 start doing it
4
1 took 6 comes
2 come 7 shape
3 by 8 question/matter
4 for 9 at
5 looking 10 good

Answers from a Czech person.
Every year I spend my summer holiday at the seaside as I love swimming. I have never had to work at swimming - it just came to me naturally. I am sure swimming must do everybody good. It helps people of any age stay in shape.

Unit 41
1
1 off 4 Both are correct.
2 out 5 away
3 Both are correct. 6 Both are correct.
2
1 take your time
2 We set off/out after breakfast
3 get away at least once a year

Answers from a New Zealander.
1 We try to get away every long weekend (four to six times a year). Often it's only a short distance, e.g. one or two hours from home. In addition, we usually have two weeks at Christmas to travel round New Zealand.
2 Last year we took a holiday out of season and stayed in motels in camping grounds. We enjoyed it so much; we'll certainly do it again.
3 We book holidays in advance if we're travelling overseas. If we're travelling in New Zealand, we prefer to take a risk and hope we find somewhere nice to stay. So far, so good.
4 We usually get around in our car. We've got a station wagon, so there's plenty of room for luggage for only two people.
5 If we're travelling a long distance we stop off about halfway, but we usually book that accommodation in advance.

Answers from a Norwegian person.
1 No, not really. I'd never plan to go away on holiday alone. I've been with friends, though.
2 Yes. We don't like package holidays. We try to find places away from the tourist areas.
3 Yes, very much so. We like to get into the country or go to the seaside.
4 No, I’m not a tent person! I like to go home to a comfortable bed. I used to rough it when I was a student, but those days are gone! 
5 No, I haven’t. 
6 Holidays really do me good.

Unit 42

1 kick off win the toss take advantage of something
cheer somebody on at full strength send somebody off

2 settle full
3 cheer get
4 kicked lost advantage

5 I’ve had enough of English they got the better of us in return I teach her English signed up for the evening course she took no part in the race help to liven up the lessons 
7 to begin with
8 do you think it will catch on

6 1 take part 2 liven things up 3 catch on 4 something to do 5 make a/any difference 6 To begin with / To start with

Answers from a Brazilian person.
I’ve definitely had some problems on the road. Two months ago I was driving along a road unaware that the speed limit was 100 kph. As I’d left home late, I speeded up so that I would manage to arrive at my appointment on time. A police officer made me pull over and gave me a $100 fine. To make matters worse, my car broke down five miles away from the police station and I had to call out the emergency services and pay another $100. As it’s said: it never rains, but it pours!

Unit 44

1 if the need be has put her heart set feel like go out going pick and select choose they can do with could
6 I’m dying for to have something to eat. OR I’m dying for to have something to eat.

2 1 I feel like a rest now. I could do with a good dictionary. Can you make do with this small map?
5 You can’t always pick and choose. I’m dying to see his new girlfriend.
6 I can’t do without my address book. We can take the car if need be.
8 She has set her heart on a career in music.

3 Answers from a Syrian person. No, I don’t. I fill it up on the way. Yes, I do. I don’t want to rush on the day of travel. Yes, I try to do that. No one wants to get stuck in traffic or arrive late.

Answers from a Brazilian person and a Czech person.
1 I could do with the latest electronic gadgets.
2 I run my own business and so I work unsocial hours six days a week. I know I couldn’t work harder. If I did, I’d go crazy.
3 I couldn’t do without my laptop and email.
4 I usually feel like going out in the evening, especially if I can sleep late the next day.
5 I’m dying to get my own flat.
6 I don’t let myself set my heart on things I know I can’t have.
7 I could make do without a car, but I’d rather not.
8 I do care about money. It enables me to do things I enjoy, such as eating out in nice restaurants, getting nice clothes, and travelling.
9 I believe you can’t always pick and choose in life.

Oh, quite so. Some of them make conversation too difficult.
Well, that sounds a little extreme. My family is central, but I try to balance all my interests.
I understand them because my work also sometimes threatens to swallow me up! However, I think they’re making a big mistake.

Unit 47

1 1 d 2 g 3 f 4 h 5 a 6 b 7 c 8 e

2 5 knocked 6 fallen/falling, together
2 down 6 up
3 up 7 down
4 write-off, ran/crashed 8 to, throw

3 1 Our neighbour was burnt down
2 this one is falling down to pieces
3 it just fell to apart in my hands.
4 the oil tank blew it up.
5 tore it up to pieces.
6 in its place of it we built a small studio
7 why don’t you just throw them out off?
8 The firemen smashed out the door down

4 1 The building burnt down.
2 The car was a write-off. OR The car had to be written off.
3 Can’t you throw away those papers? OR … throw those papers away?
4 They had to knock down the building. OR … knock the building down.
5 The book fell to bits.
6 The motorcyclist crashed into a brick wall.
7 I sewed up the hole in my pocket.
8 I sold the chair and put a sofa in its place.

5 1 apart 4 up 7 put
2 throw 5 sewing
3 together/up 6 place

Unit 48

1 1 B 2 E 3 B 4 B 5 E 6 E

2 1 out 3 up, up 5 up
2 up, down 4 out, out 6 off, up, in
Answers from a New Zealander.
1 I do more than arrive in good time! I prefer to get to work nice and early so my day can start in a relaxed way.
2 I never keep people waiting unless something totally out of the ordinary stops me arriving early.
3 I don't turn up late for social arrangements because it's considered impolite.
4 I seldom do things at the last minute. I normally do things well ahead of time.
5 I sometimes get held up if the Director of Studies wants to discuss something with me, but my class is able to continue without me for a few minutes.
6 I don't feel as if I'm wasting my breath when I give advice, because my students are very keen to learn.

Answers from a Czech person.
1 No, I never get up at the crack of dawn! I love to have a lie-in.
2 I'm not able to do so as I am a very slow person.
3 No, I always do my best to have a regular check-up.
4 I'm sorry to say that I've never ridden a horse.
5 That's true. I hate fashion and I love shopping in second-hand shops. I definitely prefer feeling comfortable to being dressed up according to the latest fashion.
6 Yes, I hope so.
7 That's right. Nevertheless I can imagine myself living in another country without any problems.
8 No, I'm not that type of person.
9 I always think about the future. I could never live from day to day.

Unit 49
1 out of date 4 once in a blue moon
2 at the crack of dawn 5 in next to no time
3 on impulse 6 for the time being

Unit 50
1 in all | at the very least | quite a few | add up | in total | lose count | round about
2 We saw dozens of rabbits in the fields.
3 She has quite a few friends in Dubai.
4 We lost count of the number of guests.
5 The flight costs $900 at the very least.
6 If you take three away (or take away three) from seven, you get four. OR If you take four away from seven you get three.

Unit 50
1 all/total, many 4 in, came
2 out, lose 5 up, took
3 round, at 6 up, quite

Answers from a Czech person.
1 No, I never get up at the crack of dawn! I love to have a lie-in.
2 I'm not able to do so as I am a very slow person.
3 No, I always do my best to have a regular check-up.
4 I'm sorry to say that I've never ridden a horse.
5 That's true. I hate fashion and I love shopping in second-hand shops. I definitely prefer feeling comfortable to being dressed up according to the latest fashion.
6 Yes, I hope so.
7 That's right. Nevertheless I can imagine myself living in another country without any problems.
8 No, I'm not that type of person.
9 I always think about the future. I could never live from day to day.

Unit 49
1 I'm starting my essay from scratch.
2 The problems occurred early on.
3 Judging by/from his story, the boys are innocent.
4 They've broken new ground.
5 The house is taking shape.
6 How did these changes come about?
7 They've knocked down the offices. OR They've knocked the offices down.
8 I'm sure they'll come up with a solution.

Unit 50
1 time 3 turn 5 up
2 keep 4 minute 6 breath

Answers from a Czech person.
1 No, I never get up at the crack of dawn! I love to have a lie-in.
2 I'm not able to do so as I am a very slow person.
3 No, I always do my best to have a regular check-up.
4 I'm sorry to say that I've never ridden a horse.
5 That's true. I hate fashion and I love shopping in second-hand shops. I definitely prefer feeling comfortable to being dressed up according to the latest fashion.
6 Yes, I hope so.
7 That's right. Nevertheless I can imagine myself living in another country without any problems.
8 No, I'm not that type of person.
9 I always think about the future. I could never live from day to day.
6 He puts his work first.
7 Shall we go fifty-fifty on the petrol?

Answers from a British person.
1 Penny, if I were you, I'd try to find out more about the new job.
2 Penny, in your shoes, I'd take the job with more money. It could lead to other things.
3 You could always ask your present boss for a pay rise.
4 I think you'd be better off doing an interesting job, even if the money's not very good.

Unit 53
1 1 ever since 4 Both are correct.
2 in the meantime 5 even if
3 Both are correct. 6 Both are correct.

2 1 as soon as / the minute (that), as well
2 at last
3 ever since
4 as if / as though
5 On the one hand, on the other (hand), In addition

Unit 54
1 1 foremost
2 tired
3 later
4 figures
5 another / the other
6 take
7 off
8 word
9 quiet
10 furious

2 come and go
one way or another
lovely and warm
wait and see
bright and early

word for word
now and then
backwards and forwards
fast and furious

3 1 word for word
2 wait and see
3 bright and early
4 backwards and forwards
5 now and then
6 sick and tired
7 one way or another
8 up and down
9 give or take
10 peace and quiet

4 1 facts and figures
2 fast and furious
3 word for word
4 sick and tired
5 lovely and quiet
6 one way or another / the other
Unit 55

1
1 in 3 under 5 out of
2 by 4 on 6 off

2
1 out of control 4 out of luck
2 on duty 5 out of tune
3 on purpose 6 in working order

3
1 season 4 order
2 tune 5 under
3 sight 6 theory, practice

4
1 in 4 in 7 at
2 for 5 for 8 in
3 at 6 in

5
1 of post 4 phone 7 place
2 mind 5 length 8 way
3 mistake 6 away

Unit 56

1
1 h 2 e 3 d 4 b 5 f 6 c 7 i 8 g 9 a

2
1 end the cat's life 5 wait for something to happen
2 leave 6 on holiday
3 got better 7
4 didn't go

3
1 pick it up 3 get out 5 put it down
2 go away 4 come on 6 get off

4
1 on, on, in 3 in
2 on, away 4 on, up

5
1 How is your English coming on?
2 Could you pick my trousers up (for me)? OR pick up my trousers (for me)
3 Are you going away this summer?
4 When does the train get in to Paris?
5 Hold on (tight)!
6 What time do you get off work?

Unit 57

1
1 make up for losing time lost
2 catch the nurse's eyes eye
3 lend me an arm a hand
4 going round in a circle in circles
5 I'd better do a move make
6 been on the going since 7 o'clock go
7 sleeping the night staying
8 keep her face straight a straight face
9 learn to say the time tell
10 Could I pick your mind brain/brains

2
1 P 2 P 3 A 4 E 5 A 6 P 7 E 8 A

3
1 To get some ideas or information.
2 You either like them very much, or you dislike them.
3 You start laughing.
4 They put the plates, knives, forks, etc. on the table ready for a meal.
5 You've been very busy.
6 You're giving your opinion in a very direct way.
7 Your skin becomes red or tanned.
8 You don't understand the main point of what someone has been saying.

4
1 stay 5 laid 9 stretch
2 keep 6 missed 10 caught
3 give/lend 7 make
4 catch 8 speak

5
Answers from an Italian person.
1 I usually do it because I'm the first back home after work.
2 Yes, but I use a lot of suncream to avoid sunburn.
3 I can't stand eating lamb because my mum made me eat it very often when I was a child.
4 Well, I try not to do that unless I am with my husband or my dearest friends; anyway, I always try to be tactful, and not too direct.
5 When I was a university student. It was fun.
6 I would like my students to do that but it rarely happens.

Unit 58

1
1 get on with your life
2 get the upper hand
3 get the hang of making chips
get away from it all.
get the most out of my computer.
get rid of rats

get ahead
get over
get through
get into
the upper hand
get rid of
get away from
8 on with

Answers from a British person.
1 I was a happy child, but I've been happiest as an adult with my own children.
2 Yes, I'm an optimistic person, and I'm usually able to look on the bright side.
3 I used to look up to people in positions of power, but I don't any more. They often don't impress me at all.
4 I know I should look out for other people who need help, but I sometimes fail to do so.
5 If the person seemed to be hungry or in need, I might look the other way.
6 I really believe in telling the truth and I can usually look people in the eye when I do.
7 People occasionally look to me for advice – usually this would be my daughters, but sometimes my colleagues.
8 Yes, I do try to look my best when I go out.
9 Unfortunately I don't look young for my age!

Unit 59

1
1 you can take it and leave it or
2 he knows how to take care for himself of
3 I told her to take her easy it
4 taking your live in your hands life
5 I was really taken back aback
6 we won't make it lying down take
7 I don't know why he took again her against
8 I asked my boss for a few days of off

2
1 Just (relax and) take it easy.
2 He took his life in his hands.
3 He takes off his boss. OR He takes his boss off.
4 I was really taken back by the job cuts.
5 She's experienced and can take care of herself.
6 She took a day off (work) today because she was ill.

3
1 for
2 your
3 age
4 to
5 bright
6 eye
7 back
8 to
9 way
10 down

Answers from a Brazilian person.
1 We met in college and immediately hit it off.
2 Hardly ever. Only on special occasions, such as weddings and Christmas.
3 I'm doing well, I believe. I'm always trying to improve my skills, though.
4 Not as often as I'd like. I give in to others more frequently than I should.
5 No one in particular. I don't have much in common with anyone in my family.
6 Not that I can recall.

Unit 60

1
1 available
2 conscious
3 find it easy to do
4 receive it from someone who has died
5 doesn't succeed
6 becomes exciting

2
1 coming and going over the next few days
2 come a long way.
3 finally came out, nobody could believe it
4 he finally came to/round and started talking
5 the moon came out – it was so romantic
6 so bad that I passed out
7 come into any money
8 coming along/on well

3
1 g
2 f
3 h
4 a
5 c
6 b
7 d
8 e

4
1 through
2 round
3 according
4 up
5 out
6 along
7 far
8 off
Answer key to review units

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1
1
1 suddenly 4 stupid/silly
2 very fast 5 anxious/upset
3 always 6 see/notice
2
1 How come, make sense
2 steer clear of him, rings a bell
3 in the distance, running flat out
4 How on earth, running like mad

Unit 2
1
1 don't ask me 6 a piece of cake
2 more or less 7 famous last words
3 better late than never 8 change your mind
4 a stone's throw 9 get nowhere
5 thank heavens
2
1 main (in the main)
2 fonder (absence makes the heart grow fonder)
3 grief (Good grief!)
4 nerves (gets on your nerves)
5 error (trial and error)
6 life (a fact of life)

Unit 3
1
1 once in a blue moon 4 fresh blood
2 pulling my leg 5 go public
3 on my doorstep 6 with reference to
2
1 the back part of a lorry
2 it's still too early days
3 caught up my eye
4 on her purpose
5 and by in the way
6 it's a long time story

Unit 4
1
1 drink less coffee
2 taking care of them
3 put on a piece of clothing
4 behaves like him
5 they've had a row
6 represent
2
1 rub it out
2 came across
3 look up ('pick up' would also be possible)
4 show up ('turn up' would also be possible)
5 check in
6 made it up
7 going out with
8 look it up

Unit 5
1
1 She went on and on about her illness.
2 Brenda was messing about/around in the garden.
3 The village was cut off by deep snow.
4 The children carried on working until lunchtime.
5 The boys were hanging around/about outside the club.
6 There was a lot of money lying around/about.
2
1 lazed around / lazed about / messed around / messed about
2 get on
3 see my brother off
4 going on
5 lying around / lying about
6 keeps on
7 dragged on
8 stayed on

Unit 6
1
1 bring 4 get
2 up 5 go
3 Both are correct. 6 Both are correct.
2
1 Please tidy up the office / tidy the office up.
2 I'll have to take these trousers back (to the shop) / take back these trousers.
3 When do you think he'll get back from lunch?
4 I flicked through the magazine.
Unit 7

1
1 goes 5 doing 9 breaks
2 turns 6 breaks 10 go
3 put 7 goes 11 goes
4 tied 8 do 12 turns

2
1 go off 4 switch on 7 broke down
2 go down 5 come up 8 done up
3 do up 6 put on 9 go off

Thinking, learning, and knowledge

Unit 8

1
1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 b

2
1 It's just the tip of the iceberg.
2 Make sure you go over your work carefully.
3 OK, let's call it a day.
4 Mark, swap places with Eve.
5 It's no good if you don't listen.
6 He's taking the course seriously.
7 First of all, turn to page 45.
8 You can leave out Exercise 3. OR You can leave Exercise 3 out.

Unit 9

1
1 understand 4 know, remember
2 concentrate/focus 5 learn, effort
3 difficult/hard 6 forget

2
1 getting 6 error
2 catch 7 get
3 keep 8 heart
4 up 9 racking
5 in 10 come

Unit 10

1
1 grips 5 through
2 work 6 steer

Unit 11

1
1 f 2 c 3 g 4 h 5 a 6 e 7 d 8 b

2
1 it's early days
2 got off on the wrong foot
3 pulling his weight
4 appears to sit back
5 Her tutor thinks
6 she's in her element
7 does her best
8 she'll go far
9 to bring out the best
10 gets on better

Unit 12

1
1 making 4 for himself
2 twice 5 over
3 it over 6 straight

Unit 13

1
1 knows it like the back of her hand
2 no good at it
3 slipped my mind
4 take it in
5 good with my hands
6 out of practice
7 knows what he's doing

Communicating with people

Unit 14

1
1 e 2 g 3 b 4 a 5 h 6 d 7 f 8 c
Unit 15
1 edgeways 5 told him off
2 across 6 face
3 down 7 behind
4 talks

Unit 16
1 get back 5 top up 8 fortune
2 earth 6 hung 9 line
3 hold on 7 through
4 charge up
The word in the grey squares is ‘telephone’.

Unit 17
1 here you have are/go.
2 Why no? not
3 as usually usual/always
4 who’s up? what’s
5 hurry on up
6 Guess that? what
7 Just tell when say
8 Why come? How
9 Time’s over up
10 all the better best
11 kind off of
12 it’s up for you to

Unit 18
1 T F T F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T
2 1 again (You can say that again)
2 yourself (see for yourself)
3 goes (see how it goes)
4 least (to say the least)
5 no (I wouldn’t say no)
6 not (I don’t see why not)
7 see (let me see)
8 say (I’d rather not say)

Unit 19
1 hard lucky luck
2 It’s not of your business none
3 Good heaven! heavens
4 No at all Not
5 It’s all the same for me to
6 Goodness knows it
7 no bad not
8 don’t mind never

Unit 20
1 No 5 Yes 9 Yes
2 Yes 6 Yes 10 No
3 No 7 No
4 No 8 Yes

Unit 21
1 far 5 extent 9 highly
2 make 6 honest 10 thing
3 point 7 pros
4 agree 8 doubt
The idiom in the grey squares is ‘fair enough’.

Unit 22
1 act the fool
2 tell someone off
3 make fun of someone
4 hit the roof
5 not on speaking terms
6 take a joke
7 for a laugh
8 burst out laughing
People and relationships

Unit 23
1
A man is hanging up his jacket / hanging his jacket up, a boy is standing on tiptoe, a doctor is shaking hands with someone, a couple are holding hands, the receptionist is throwing something away, a man is blowing his nose, a woman is sitting with her legs crossed and her arms folded.
1 yes 2 yes 3 no 4 no 5 yes 6 no

Unit 24
1
1 b 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 c 6 h 7 d 8 g
2
1 grew 4 trouble 7 life
2 brought 5 stayed 8 out
3 looked 6 nothing

Unit 25
1
1 live off
2 give in
3 goes on
4 leave (them) alone
5 feel (at) ease
6 gets away
7 stand (on your own two) feet
8 take offence
9 be yourself
10 get through

Unit 26
1
1 let 4 myself 7 invite
2 lend 5 turn 8 moving
3 lift 6 common
2
1 put out with him up
2 run the risk in of
3 take it to an end bring
4 round and about out
5 getting long with them along
6 help her off out
7 held him company kept
8 break an ice the

Unit 27
1
1 crossed 4 edge 7 about
2 state 5 lives 8 tears
3 skin 6 thrilled
2
have/get butterflies in your stomach
over the moon
I didn't know whether to laugh or cry
get cold feet about sth
it breaks your heart (to see or do sth)
shake like a leaf

Unit 28
1
1 first 5 between 9 shoes
2 type 6 stick 10 chat
3 world 7 good 11 build
4 crazy 8 wrong 12 split
The word in the grey squares is 'relationship'.

Unit 29
1
1 angry/frustrated/upset
2 happier
3 continue
4 angry/annoyed
5 angry
6 opinion
2
1 change the subject
2 the last minute
3 give and take
4 take it into account
5 round the bend
6 over and over again
7 put it off
8 show off
9 by myself

Unit 30
1
1 believe 4 ground 7 fun
2 lose 5 heart 8 feet
3 far 6 comes
2
1 over 4 keeping 7 in
2 way 5 any 8 know
3 else 6 say

Everyday topics

Unit 31

1
1 over 5 of luck
2 chances are 6 a row
3 out 7 up
4 up 8 on the bright side

Unit 32

1 wide awake, have a lie-in, sleep like a log, toss and turn, the night before last, not sleep a wink, worried sick, fall asleep

Unit 33

1
1 up 4 live 7 up
2 ends 5 pay 8 cover
3 cost 6 cut 9 careful

Unit 34

1
1 turn/heat 5 rid 9 on
2 chop 6 into 10 cut
3 down 7 make
4 cool 8 out

Unit 35

1 He won’t get away with the robbery.
They broke into a shop.
They beat him up quite badly.
They caught him red-handed.
They’re on the lookout for the robbers.
The thief ran off with my wallet.
She could get into trouble with the police.
The prisoner is still on the run.

Unit 36

1
1 checking it up on me
I was up to for the job
To make the matters worse
stand up by me either
I handed them in my notice
I was taken down on as a medical secretary
I wasn’t really cut off out for it
they gave to me the sack

2
1 down 3 time 5 nothing
2 five 4 thank 6 it

Unit 37

1
1 B 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G 8 B

2
1 out 3 on 5 for
2 into 4 up 6 up

Unit 38

1
1 for 4 offer 7 rather
2 send 5 wrap 8 around
3 sold 6 get

Out and about

Unit 39

1
1 feel like going out
talked me into it
just round the corner
thinking of trying it out
packed in like sardines
eat out on a Saturday night
you’re asking for trouble
we bumped into Susie
ended up back at her flat
a pretty late night after all

2
1 Shall we eat out?
The owner threw us out.
He jumped the queue.
That music isn’t my cup of tea.
Shall we go halves?
That shop has changed hands.
He took exception to Martin’s comments.
I would keep away from her.
Unit 40

1 forward 4 shape 7 out, sudden
2 come 5 move 8 catch
3 good 6 after

2
to slow down
tell behind the others
holding everyone up so they went on
turned round/around and walked
I have to work at it
to go in for that competition
She took up swimming
keep up with him

Unit 41

1 get 5 happens 9 away
2 rough 6 air 10 around
3 advance 7 good
4 season 8 beaten

Unit 42

1 toss 4 strength
2 sent off 5 no part
3 cheering them on 6 popular/fashionable

2
a difference
part
do with sport
close to winning
enough of training
it up
up for an English course
off to a good start

Unit 43

1 down 5 fill 9 off/out
2 stand 6 case 10 pull
3 out 7 down
4 break 8 nowhere

Unit 44

1 do 4 feel 7 need
2 care 5 pick 8 do
3 set 6 dying

Answers from a British person.
1 I couldn't do without a car.
2 I couldn't care less about looking younger than I am.
3 I've set my heart on a holiday walking with friends.
4 At the moment I feel like reading my book – it's very gripping!
5 You can't pick and choose how wealthy you become.
6 I'm dying to go to the coast soon, to walk along a wild and windswept beach.
7 If need be I could sell the jewellery my mother-in-law left to me – but I'd much rather not.
8 I could make do with a smaller car.

Unit 45

1 mess ('muck' is also possible)
2 call
3 look
4 ahead
5 put
6 plan
7 forward
8 on
9 messes

The phrase in the grey squares is 'make plans'.
Unit 46

1 No, I'm not mad about it either.
2 No, it's not my cup of tea either.
3 Yes, it grows on you.
4 No, I've gone off it too / as well.
5 Yes, it's too spicy for my liking too / as well.
6 I agree. I can't bear them either.

Unit 47

1 DAMAGE or DESTRUCTION
   tear sth to pieces
   burn sth down
   write sth off
   fall apart
   smash sth up
   fall to bits
   break sth down
   crash into sth
   REPAIR or CONSTRUCTION
   sew sth up
   put sth together
   smarten sth up
   put sth up

2 blew down
2 tore it to bits
3 write off

Unit 48

1
   1 from
   2 came
   3 break
   4 set
   5 up
   6 out

Unit 49

1
   1 on the dot
   2 over and over again
   3 out of date
   4 on the spur of the moment
   5 at the crack of dawn
   6 for the time being

2
   1 turned up
   2 held up
   3 kept us waiting
   4 last minute

Unit 50

1 hundred per
2 go fifty-fifty
3 second thoughts
4 dozens of

2 round about
2 in all / total
3 take away
4 quite a few / lot
5 comes to
6 Ten to one
7 put two and two together
8 at the (very) most

Unit 51

1 trick
2 rushed
3 chance
4 over

5 stretch
6 faintest
7 top
8 killing

The phrase in the grey squares is 'I have no idea'.

Unit 52

1 were (if I were you)
2 sorry ('s feeling sorry for himself)
3 off (would be better off)
4 shoes / place / position (in his shoes / place / position)
5 could / can (could always)
6 account / consideration (take into account / consideration)
7 case (In that case)
8 luck (The best of luck)
Language

Unit 53

1
TIME
at last
ever since
as soon as
in the meantime
CONTRAST
on the other hand
even if
in spite of
EXTRA INFORMATION
as well
in addition
2
Possible answers.
1 a cup of coffee / a bowl of soup
2 it can be lonely / you have to pay all the bills
3 they’ll get married
4 he works really hard
5 get home / get the information / know the answer
6 all her problems / her poor health
7 he turned up / the train arrived
8 his wife left him / he lost his job

Unit 54

1
1 sooner or later
2 sick and tired
3 up and down
4 backwards and forwards
5 now and then
6 word for word
7 give or take
8 bright and early
9 peace and quiet

Unit 55

1
IN
theory...
7 I think he got a lot out of the course. OR I think he got the most out of the course.
8 I think she’s getting on/along well.

2
1 nearly/almost (is getting on for)
2 advantage (get the upper hand)
3 successful / doing well (get ahead)
4 you want (get your own way)
5 learn how to do it (get the hang of something)
4 bad or wrong (get mixed up in something)

Unit 59

1
1 P 2 N 3 N 4 P 5 N 6 P 7 P 8 N

2
1 look back on
2 take it easy
3 looks young for her age
4 looked up to
5 taken aback
6 looks the other way

Unit 60

1
1 go 3 gone 5 come
2 going 4 goes 6 comes

2
1 comes out 6 came to life
2 go round 7 go according
3 came to 8 came to nothing
4 came into 9 go far
5 come a long way

The phrasal verb in the grey squares is ‘come along’.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Intransitive and transitive verbs</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs in dictionaries</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5A</td>
<td>go on</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>get back</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>hand sth in/out/round</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B</td>
<td>Remembering and forgetting</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Idioms with best</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B</td>
<td>think the world of sb/ssth, not think much of sb/ssth, etc.</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Idioms with good</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>in touch</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>hang on, hang up, hang up on sb</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>be up to sb</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18B</td>
<td>Greetings</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19A</td>
<td>I beg your pardon</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19B</td>
<td>More idioms with goodness</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Sending greetings to other people</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21A</td>
<td>point</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Expressions with joke</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs with knock</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24B</td>
<td>stay out/in, stay up</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25A</td>
<td>on the whole</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>go on</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27A</td>
<td>Idioms with mind</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29B</td>
<td>Expressing anger</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Idioms with feet</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>start off, start out</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33A</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs with pay</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34A</td>
<td>Giving advice</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34B</td>
<td>get rid of sth/sb</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs and idioms with run</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36A</td>
<td>make it</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37A</td>
<td>take sth on, take sb on</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40B</td>
<td>shape</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41A</td>
<td>get away</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>put sth off, put sth back</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>to pieces/bits</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs with set</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49A</td>
<td>Idioms with time</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50A</td>
<td>count</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50B</td>
<td>in his twenties</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>as well, in addition</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>lovely and ...</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55A</td>
<td>in/out of tune, etc.</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58B</td>
<td>get on, get along</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60A</td>
<td>come out</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word list / Index

Here is an index of all the idioms and phrasal verbs, in alphabetical order according to the first word. The numbers are unit numbers. (If you cannot remember the first word, see the list of key words on page 187.)

(a bit) on the big/small side 51
a (good) laugh 1
a bag/bundle of nerves 3
a fact of life 2
a going concern 37
a laugh 1
a matter of time 49
a night/day out 39
a pain in the neck 2
a piece of cake 2
a short cut 43
a stone’s throw 2
a vicious circle 37
a way of life / sb’s way of life 24
a/one hundred per cent 50
absence makes the heart grow fonder 2
act/play the fool 22
add sth up 50
after all 20
again and again 29
all by yourself 26
all hours 36
all of a sudden 40
all over the place (= everywhere) 41
all over the place (= in an untidy state) 29, 51
all the best 17
an early / a late night 39
answer (sb) back 15
any moment 3
anyone’s guess 30
as always 17
as far as I’m concerned 21
as if 53
as it happens/happened 41
as many as 50
as regards 3
as soon as 53
as though 53
as usual 17
as well 53
ask sb out 28
at a time 43
(at) any moment 3
at full stretch 51
at home 8
at last 53
at length 55
at once 55
at sb’s expense 29
at the (very) least 50
at the (very) most 50
at the crack of dawn 49
at the earliest 20
at the last minute/moment 3
at the latest 20
at the least 50
at the most 50
back to front 23
backwards and forwards 54
bad luck! 19
badly off 33
base sth on sth 30
be (living) in a dream world 37
be (really) into sth 46
be a good thing (that) 1, 3
be a matter of (doing) sth 40
be a question of (doing) sth 40
be about to do sth 27
be asking for trouble 39
be at fault 25
be better off (doing sth) 11, 52
be bored to tears 27
be common knowledge 14
be cut out for sth / to do sth 36
be dying to do sth / for sth 44
be for/in a good cause 40
be fresh out of sth 3
be getting on for ... 58
be in debt 33
be in the mood (for sth) 27
be in touch (with sb) 14
be in two minds about sth 1
be in with a chance (of doing sth) 51
be in / get into a state 1, 27
be meant to do sth 2
be on the go 57
be on the lookout for sth/sb 35
be out of touch (with sth) 11, 25
be out of your depth 51
be out of your mind 37
be over the moon 27
be rolling in money 1
be rushed/run off your feet 51
be set in your ways 25
be snowed under 20
be starving 34
be supposed to do sth 2
- be taken aback 59
- be thrilled to bits 27
- be tied up 7
- be to blame (for sth) 25
- be up to sth 36
- be up to you/him/her, etc. 17
- be worlds apart 25
- be your type 28
- be yourself 25
- be/go on a diet 34
- be/have sth to do with sth/sb 20, 42
- be/keep sb in the dark 14
- beat sb up 35
- behind bars 35
- behind sb's back 15
- behind the times 25
- believe in sth 30
- beside the point 21
- best of luck 10, 19, 52
- better late than never 2
- bit by bit 40
- bite sb's head off 29
- bless you! 19
- blow (sth) up 47
- blow down 47
- blow your nose 23
- bored stiff 27
- break down (= start crying) 7
- break down (of a vehicle = stop working) 7, 43
- break in/into sth 35
- break new ground 48
- break out (of a fire, fight, etc. = start) 48
- break sth down 47
- break the ice 26
- break the news 14
- break up (with sb) 28
- break your heart 27
- break your journey 43
- break-in 35
- breathe in/out 10
- bridge the gap 37
- bright and early 2, 54
- brighten up 31
- bring out the best/worst in sb 11
- bring sb up (to do sth) 24
- bring sth back 6
- bring sth forward 45
- bring sth to an end 26
- brush sth up / brush up on sth 9
- build on sth 28
- build sth up 8
- bump into sb 39
- burn (sth) down 47
- burn sth up 34
- burst into tears 24
- burst out laughing 22
- by accident 55
- by and large 21, 25
- by comparison 11
- by mistake 55
- by yourself 29
- by return (of post) 55
- by the way 20
- call by 20
- call in 20
- call it a day 8
- call sb out 43
- call sth off 45
- calm down / calm sb down 27
- can always 52
- can't bear (doing) sth 46
- can't help (doing) sth 27
- can't stand (doing) sth 2, 46
- can't wait / can hardly wait 28
- careful with money 33
- carry on (doing sth) 5
- catch on 42
- catch sb red-handed 35
- catch sb up / catch up with sb 40
- catch sb's eye 3, 57
- catch the sun 57
- catch your death of cold 3
- change hands 37, 39
- change the subject 29
- change your mind 2, 29
- charge sth up 16
- chat sb up 28
- check in 4
- check up on sb 36
- cheer sb on 42
- cheer sb up 29
- cheer up! 29
- chop sth up 34
- chuck sb out 39
- clear off 5
- clear sth up 6
- close by 39
- close down 48
- cloud over 31
- come a long way 60
- come about 48
- come across sth/sb 4
- come along 60
- come and go (= be present then go away) 54
- come and go (= arrive then leave) 60
- come back to sb 9
- come between sb (and sb) 28
- come close to sth / to doing sth 42
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come in (= arrive)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come in (first, second, etc.)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come into sth</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come naturally (to sb/sth)</td>
<td>40, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come off</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on! (= hurry up!)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on (= improve / make progress)</td>
<td>56, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on (of an illness = begin)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on! (= showing disbelief)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out (= appear, e.g. the sun)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out (= become available to buy or see)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out (= become known)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come round</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to an end</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to life</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to nothing</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to sth</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come true</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up (= happen or appear)</td>
<td>10, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up with sth</td>
<td>11, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confide in sb</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cool down</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost a fortune</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost the earth</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could always</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could do with sth</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couldn't care less</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count on sb/sth</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count sth out</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count sth up</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover the cost (of sth)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash into sth/stb</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crazy about sth</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crop up</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross sth out</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross your legs</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross your mind</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut back on sth</td>
<td>4, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut corners</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut down (on sth)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut sb off</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut sth off (sth)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with sth/stb</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die out</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sb good</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(do sth) for a laugh</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sth to the best of your ability</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sth up (= fasten)</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sth up (= renovate)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the trick</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do without sth/stb</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do your best</td>
<td>10, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do your bit</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't ask me</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't give a damn</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dos and don'ts</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down in the dumps</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dozens of sth</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag on</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drift apart</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink sth up</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive off</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive on</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive sb round the bend</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive sb up the wall</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop by</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop off (to sleep)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop out (of sth)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop sb a line</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop sb/sth off</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early on</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat in</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat out</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat sth up</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end up (somewhere / doing sth)</td>
<td>39, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even if</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>even so</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever since</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facts and figures</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair enough</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair share</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall apart</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall asleep</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall behind (sb/sth)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall for sb</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall in love with sb</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall out with sb</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall over</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall through</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall to bits</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall to pieces</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall / come off the back of a lorry</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous last words</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast and furious</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast asleep</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel like sth / doing sth</td>
<td>39, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel sorry for yourself</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel up to (doing) sth</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel/be at ease (with sb)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel/be sorry for sb</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fingers crossed</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill in time</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill sth in (= fill sth completely)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill sth in (= write on a form)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill sth up (with sth)</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill yourself up (with sth)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find your feet</td>
<td>2, 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
finish (up) with sth 48
finish sth off 8
first and foremost 54
first of all 8
fix sth up 45, 49
flat out 1
flick through sth 6
fold your arms 23
follow in sb’s footsteps 24
for a laugh 22
for certain 55
for fun 30
for good 28
for goodness sake! 19
for nothing 38
for one thing 21
for sale 37
for sure 55
for the most part 21
for the time being 49
from scratch 48
from time to time 49
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick 22
get a joke 22
get a move on 40
get about 41
get ahead 58
get along (= make progress) 58
get along (with sb) (= have a friendly relationship) 26, 58
get around 41
get away (from sb/sth) (= succeed in leaving sb or a place) 20, 41
get away (= go on holiday) 41
get away from it all 58
get away with sth 24, 35
get back 6
get back to sb 16
get back to sth 6
get behind (with sth) 9, 36
get bogged down (in sth) 10
get by 58
get cold feet 27
get down to sth 10
get from A to B 43
get hold of sb 14
get in (= be accepted to study at a school, etc.) 56
get in (= arrive) 56
get in (= enter a vehicle) 56
get in the way of sth 30
get in touch (with sb) 14
get into shape 40
get into sth 58
get into the habit of doing sth 10
get into trouble (for sth) 24
get lost! 2
can get mixed up in sth 58
can get mixed up with sb 58
can get nowhere 2
can get off (= leave a bus, train, etc.) 56
can get off (= leave on a journey) 56
can get off (= leave work with permission) 56
can get off to a good/better/bad start 42
can get on (= make progress) 11, 58
can get on (with sb) (= have a friendly relationship) 26, 58
can get on for 58
can get on sb’s nerves 2, 29
can get on top of sb 51
can get on top of sth 10
can gets on with sth 5
can get on with your life 58
can get out (= leave a place) 56
can get out (of information = become known) 56
can get out and about 26
can get out of sth (= stop doing sth) 58
can get out of sth (= avoid a responsibility) 20
can get over sth 58
can get rid of sth 34, 58
can get sth across (to sb) 15
can get sth back 6, 38
can get sth off the ground 48
can get sth out of sth (= remove sth) 34
can get sth out of sth (= benefit from sth) 41, 58
can get stuck (on sth) 10
can get the better of sb/sth 42
can get the hang of sth 13, 58
can get the most out of sth 58
can get the upper hand 58
can get there 9
can get through (to sb) (= make contact by phone) 2, 16
can get through to sb (= make sb understand) 25
can get through sth (= complete a task) 36
can get through sth (= pass a test) 58
can get to grips with sth 10
can get to know sb 58
can get together (with sb) 20, 58
can get up to (sth) 25
can get your money’s worth 33
can get your own back (on sb) 24
can get your own way 58
can get/have butterflies in your stomach 27
can get/start off on the wrong foot 11
can give a hundred (and ten) per cent 50
can give and take 29
can give birth (to sb) 24
can give in (to sb) 25
can give in (to sth) 34
can give my love to sb 20
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give my regards to sb</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give or take</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb a hard time</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb a lift</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb a ring/call</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb my love</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb the sack</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sth a try</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sth back</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sth out</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sth up / give up doing sth</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up (= stop trying to do sth)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go according to plan</td>
<td>45, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go after sb</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go ahead</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go ahead (with sth)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go along with sth</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go away (= leave home for a holiday)</td>
<td>41, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go away! (used to tell sb/sth to leave)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go away (of a problem = stop existing)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back (to ...)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go blank</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down (= become lower)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down (of the sun = disappear)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down to ...</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down with sth</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go far</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go fifty-fifty</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go from bad to worse</td>
<td>11, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go halves</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go in for sth</td>
<td>4, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go in one ear and out the other</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off (= explode)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off (= ring)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off (= leave)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off (of lights, etc. = stop working)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off sb/sth</td>
<td>46, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on (= continue without changing)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on (= last)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on (= happen)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on (about sth/sb)</td>
<td>5, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on to sth</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on! (used for encouragement)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out of business</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out with sb</td>
<td>4, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go over sth</td>
<td>8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go public</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go red (in the face)</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go round (to...)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go round in circles</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go through sth (= check sth carefully)</td>
<td>6, 8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go through sth (= experience sth difficult)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go without sth</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go wrong</td>
<td>22, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good at sth</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good grief!</td>
<td>2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good heavens!</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good luck</td>
<td>52, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good with sb</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good with your hands</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodness knows!</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodness me!</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grind to a halt/standstill</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow into sth</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow on sb</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guess what?</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand in your notice</td>
<td>36, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand in hand</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand sth in</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand sth out</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand sth round</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang around/about</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang on (= continue doing sth difficult)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang on (= wait)</td>
<td>16, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang on (= keep holding sth)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang sth up</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang up</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang up on sb</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard at it</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard luck!</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard up</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have (got) sth on</td>
<td>20, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (good) head for sth</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a good/bad night</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a lie-in</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a long way to go</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a sweet tooth</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a thing about sth/sb</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have an early / a late night</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have had enough of sth/sb</td>
<td>40, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have had it</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have no idea</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have sb to thank (for sth)</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have second thoughts</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have sth in common</td>
<td>3, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have the last laugh</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have the time of your life</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have/keep your feet on the ground</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear from sb</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear! hear!</td>
<td>2, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat sth up</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help sb out</td>
<td>26, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here and there</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here goes</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here to stay</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here you are</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here's to sb/sth</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

180  Word list / Index
hit it off (with sb) 28
hit the roof 22
hold hands 23
hold on (= wait) 16, 56
hold on (tight) (= keep holding sth) 56
hold on (= continue doing sth difficult) 56
hold sb up 49, 40
hold the line 16
hold up sth (= rob) 35
hold-up 35
how come? 1, 17
hurry up 17
I beg your pardon 19
I couldn't agree more 21
I couldn't tell you 18
I dare say 30
I don't see why not 18
I have to / must say (that) 18
I know 17
(I) must / must say 20
I told you (so) 18
I wouldn't say no 18
I'd rather not say 18
I'll say 3
I'll see what I can do 18
I'm not bothered 19
(I'm) sorry? 19
I'm very / terribly sorry 19
if I were in your place/position/shoes 52
if I were you 34, 52
if need be 44
if the worst comes to the worst 30
if all else fails 1
if you ask me 3, 21
if you like 19
in (next to) no time 49, 51
in (such) a hurry to do sth 51
in a row 31
in addition 53
in advance (of sth) 41
in all 50
in case 43
in charge (of sb/sth) 2
in confidence 55
in full swing 26
in general 25
in good time 49
in luck 31, 55
in his twenties, etc. 50
in no time 49, 51
in place of sth/sb 47
in practice 55
in return (for sth) 42
in rough 8
in safe hands 27
in season 55
in shape 40
in sight 55
in some ways 21
in spite of 53
in sth/sb's place 47
in that case 2, 52
in the black 33
in the distance 1
in the end 1, 55
in the long run 21
in the long term 21
in the main 2
in the meantime 53
in the open air 41
in the red 33
in the/sb's way 55
in theory 55
in total 50
in tune 55
in vain 3, 35
in working order 55
in writing 55
in your blood 24
in your element 11
in your shoes 52
inside out 23
invite sb round 26
it / that depends 3
it's a long story 3
it's about time 20
it's all the same to me 19
it's early days 3, 11
it's no good (doing sth) 8
it's no use (doing sth) 8
it's none of your business! 19
it's not the end of the world 10
judging by/from sth 48
jump out of your skin 27
jump the lights 43
jump the queue 39
(just) for fun 30
(just) in case 43
(just) round the corner 20, 39
keep a straight face 57
keep away from sb/sth 39
keep in touch (with sb) 14
keep it up 9
keep on doing sth 5, 29
keep quiet (about sth) 14
keep sb company 26
keep sb waiting 49
keep sth to yourself 30
look out for sth/sb (= keep trying to find sb/sth) 43
look sb in the eye 59
look sth up 4, 8
look the other way 59
look through sth 6
look to sb 59
look up 4
look up to sb 24, 59
look young for your age 59
look your best 59
lose count (of sth) 50
lose face 1
lose touch (with sb) 14
lose your temper (with sb) 27
lose/win the toss 42
lots of love 3
love at first sight 28
lovely and warm/quiet/cold 54
mad about sb (= in love with sb) 28
mad about sth/sb (= liking sb/sth very much) 46
make a change 41
make a fool of yourself 22
make a go of sth 37
make a joke of sth 22
make a move 57
make a/some/any/no difference 42
make do (with sth) 44
make ends meet 33, 37
make fun of sb 2, 22
make it (= be present) 36, 45
make it (= be successful) 36
make it (= survive) 36
make of sb/sth 21
make sense (= be practical) 1
make sense (= have a clear meaning) 10
make sense of sth (= manage to understand sth) 9
make sth up 4
make sure 34
make the grade 52
make the most of sth 9, 31
make up for lost time 57
make up your mind 12
make use of sth 34
make you sick 27
make yourself understood 9
mess around/about (with sth) 5
mess around/about 29
mess sth up 45
mind out! 19
mind your own business! 19
miss sth out 10
miss the point 57
more and more 25
(more than) your fair share of sth 29
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>more or less</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move in</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move on to sth</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move out</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muck sth up</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must dash</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my back/feet etc. is/are killing me</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never in a million years</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never mind</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new/fresh blood</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next door (to sb/sth)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next to nothing</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine to five</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no chance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no) good at sth</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no time to lose</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no way!</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod your head</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not (too) bad</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not a penny</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not any longer / no longer</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not at all</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not bad</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be on speaking terms</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be up to much</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not breathe/say a word (about/of sth)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not come easy (to sb)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not exactly</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not get a word in edgeways</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not go far</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not have a clue</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not have the faintest idea</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not just yet</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know whether to laugh or cry</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not my thing</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not sb's cup of tea</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not sleep a wink</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not take sth lying down</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not think much of sb/sth</td>
<td>11, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not) think straight</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not your cup of tea</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing like sb/sth</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now and then</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off duty</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off the beaten track</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on (special) offer</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on a shoestring</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on and off / off and on</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on board</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on duty</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on edge</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on good/bad terms with sb</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on horseback</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on impulse</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on offer</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on purpose</td>
<td>3, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on sale</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the big/small side</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the dot</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the increase</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the one hand ... on the other (hand)</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the phone (= by phone)</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the phone (= using the phone)</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the rise</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the run</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the spur of the moment</td>
<td>12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the tip of your tongue</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the whole</td>
<td>21, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the/your doorstep</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on tiptoe</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on top</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on your mind</td>
<td>27, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on your own</td>
<td>26, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once in a blue moon</td>
<td>3, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once or twice</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one after another / the other</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one at a time</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one by one</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one day</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one or two</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one step at a time</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one way or another</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(only) a matter of time</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt out (of sth)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or else</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out loud</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of breath</td>
<td>3, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of control</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of date</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of luck</td>
<td>31, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of order</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of place</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of practice</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of season (= when few people go on holiday)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of season (= not growing or ready to eat)</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of shape</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of sight</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of the blue</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of tune</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over and over again</td>
<td>29, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packed in like sardines</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass out</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay sb back                                6, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay sth in</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay sth off</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace and quiet</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone sb back                              6, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick and choose</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrase</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick sb's brain</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick sth up (= collect sth)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick sth up (= learn sth without effort)</td>
<td>9, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick sth up (= take sth from a lower level)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up (= improve)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pile up</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluck up (the) courage (to do sth)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point of view</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop in/over/round</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop out</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pros and cons</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull in</td>
<td>43, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull out</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull over</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull sb's leg</td>
<td>3, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull your weight</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push in</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in a (good) word (for sb)</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off doing sth</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb down</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb through</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb up</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb/sth first</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth away</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth back (= postpone sth)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth back (= return sth to its place)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth off</td>
<td>29, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth on (= become fatter)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth on (= dress yourself)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth on (= make sth start working)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth out (= leave sth outside)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth out (= stop sth burning)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth together</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth up</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put two and two together</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with sb/sth</td>
<td>26, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put your foot in it</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put yourself in sb's shoes/place</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite a few / a lot (of sth)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rack your brain(s)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather than</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read sth through</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember me to sb</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revolve around sb/sth</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(right) at the last minute</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring a bell</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring sb back</td>
<td>6, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rip sb off</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rip-off</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling in money/it</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rough it</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round about</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round the corner</td>
<td>20, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub sth out</td>
<td>4, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run after sb/sth</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run away (from somewhere)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run in the family</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run into sb (= meet sb by chance)</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run into sth/sb (= hit sb in a car, bus, etc.)</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run off with sth</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run out of sth</td>
<td>10, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run sth up</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run the risk of doing sth</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same here</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save for a rainy day</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save up (for sth)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say when</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see for yourself</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see how it goes</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see how things go</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see sb off</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see you (later/around/soon)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell out (of sth)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell up</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send off/away for sth</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send sb off</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send sth back</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send/give my love to sb</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set off</td>
<td>41, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out</td>
<td>41, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out to do sth</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set sth up</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set your heart on sth</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settle down</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settle for sth</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew sth up</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake hands</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake like a leaf</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake your head</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop around (for sth)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show off</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show sb the ropes</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show up</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show-off</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sick and tired</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign up (for/to/with sth)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink in</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit about/around</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink in</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit back</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit up (= not go to bed)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit up (= sit in an upright position)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep like a log</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep through sth</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slip your mind/memory</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow down</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow sb down</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smarten sth/sb up</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smash sth down</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
smash sth up 47
so far 30
something to do with 20
sooner or later 54
sorry? 19
sort of 17
sort sth out 51
speak up 15
speak your mind 15, 57
speed up 43
splash out (on sth) 38
split sb up 28
split up (with sb) 28
stand a chance (of sth / of doing sth) 43
stand around/about 26
stand by sb 36
stand for sth 4
stand on your own two feet 25
(start) from scratch 48
start off (= begin in a particular way) 48
start off/out (= begin doing sth) 31
start out (= begin with an intention) 48
stay in 24
stay on 5
stay out 24
stay the night 57
stay up 10, 24
stay/steer clear of sb/sth 1, 10
stick at sth 9
stick to sth (= write/talk about one thing) 10
stick to sth (= continue doing sth and not
change it) 43
stick together 28
stop off 41
straight away 55
stretch your legs 57
sure enough 40
swap places with sb 2, 8
switch off 51
switch sth on 7
take (no) notice of sb 59
take (time) off 59
take a joke 22
take advantage of sth 2, 42
take after sb 4, 24
take against sb 59
take care 17
take care of yourself 59
take exception to sth/sb 39
take it easy 59
take it/sth in 13
take it in turns 8
take it or leave it 59
take money off 33
take no part (in sth) 42
take off 5
take offence (at sth) 25
take out (a loan/insurance) 37
take over sth 30
take part (in sth) 42
take sb off 59
take sb on 36, 37
take shape 48
take sth away 50
take sth back 4, 6
take sth in 13
take sth into account 29, 52
take sth into consideration 52
take sth off 7
take sth on 37
take sth out (of a bank account) 33
take sth over 37
take sth seriously 8
take sth the wrong way 22
take sth up 40, 48
take the lead 42
take your life in your hands 59
take your mind off sth 27
take your time 28, 41, 51
talk down to sb 15
talk it/sth over 12
talk nonsense 15
talk sb into (doing) sth 39
talk sense 15
talk sth over 12
tear sth to bits/pieces 47
tell me, ... 18
tell sb off (for sth / for doing sth) 15, 22
tell the time 57
ten to one 50
thank goodness! 19
thank heavens 2
thanks to sb/sth 11
that would be telling 18
that/it depends 1
that's life 52
(the) best of luck 10, 19, 52
the chances are (that) 31
the last minute 29
the last moment 29
the middle of nowhere 43
the minute (that) 53
the night before last 32
the other day 49
the rat race 37
the thing is 21
the tip of the iceberg 8
there is nothing in it 30
(there's) no time to lose 30
there is something in sth 30
there you are/go 17
think a lot of sb/sth 11
think ahead (to sth) 12
think back (to sth) 12
think for yourself 12
think highly / a lot of sb/sth 21
think on your feet 11
think it/sth over/through 12
think straight 12
think the world of sb 11, 28
think twice 12
third time lucky 50
throw a party 26
throw sb out 39
throw sth away 23, 47
throw sth out 34, 47
tidy sth away 29
tidy sth up 6
tie sb/sth up 7
time and time again 49
time's up 17
to a certain extent 21
to be honest 21
to begin/start with 42
to bits 27
to make matters/things worse 36
to say the least 18
to sb's face 15
to some extent 21
to tell you the truth 18
too ... for my liking 46
top up (your mobile) 16
toss and turn 32
touch wood 3
trial and error 2, 9
trick sb into sth / doing sth 35
trip sb up 23
try sth on 4
try sth/sth out 39
try your best 10
turn a blind eye (to sth) 1, 24
turn around/round 40
turn out (to be) 41, 39
turn sb down 36, 52
turn sth down 26, 34
turn sth (from sth) into sth 34, 37
turn sth on 7
turn sth up 26, 34
turn up (= arrive) 7, 49
turn up (= be found) 7
under control 55
up and down 54
up and running 37
up to a point 21
ups and downs 29
use sth up 6
wait and see 54
wait up (for sb) 20
(walk) hand in hand 23
walk out (on sb) 28
waste your breath 49
watch out! 19
well done! 19
well off 33
what do you make of sb/sth? 21
what have you been up to? 20
what/whatever sb says goes 60
what's up? 17
whatever you do 34
whatever you say 18
when it comes to sth / doing sth 25
why not? 17
why (how, where, who, etc.) on earth 1
wide awake 32
with reference to sth 3
without (a) doubt 21
without fail 1
word for word 54
work at sth 40
work sth out 10
worried sick (about sth/sth) 32
wrap sth up 38
write sth down 4
write sth off 47
write-off 47
yes and no 19
you can say that again 18
you never know 30
you see 18
you/they, etc. can/could always ... 52
you'll see 18
you're joking! 19
you're kidding! 19
you're welcome 19
you've got a point 21
your fair share of sth 29
your heart isn't it sth 30
Key words

If you cannot remember the first word of an idiom, look here for other key words that are used in the idiom. The numbers are unit numbers.

A 43
aback 59
ability 10
about 26, 27, 50
absence 2
accident 55
account 29, 52
addition 53
advance 41
advantage 2, 42
after 20
again 18, 29, 49
age 59
agree 21
air 41
all 8, 19, 50
alone 25
always 17, 52
another 34
apart 47
arms 23
ask 2, 3, 21, 39
asleep 32
awake 32
away 39, 55, 58
B 43
back 3, 13, 15, 23
backwards 54
bad 11, 19, 37
badly 33
bars 35
bear 46
beaten 41
before 32
beg 19
begin 42
behind 15, 25, 35
bell 1
bend 29
beside 21
best 10, 11, 17, 19, 52, 59
better 2, 11, 52, 00
between 28
birth 24
bit 40, 41
bite 29
bits 27, 47
black 33
blame 25
blank 10
bless 19
blind 1, 24
blood 3, 24
blow 23
blue 1, 3, 49
board 27
bog 10
bored 27
bothered 19
brain(s) 5, 9
break 48, 26, 14, 27, 43
breath 3, 40, 49
breathe 14
bridge 37
bright 2, 31, 54, 59
burst 24, 22
business 19
butterflies 27
cake 2
call N 14
call V 8
care N 17, 59
care V 44
case 2, 43, 52
catch 35, 3, 57,
cause 40
certain 55
chance N 3, 43, 51
chances N 31
change 41
change V 2, 29, 37, 39
charge 2
choose 44
circle N 37
circles N 57
clear 1, 10
close 39, 42
close 51
cold ADJ 27
cold N 3
common 3, 14, 26
company 26
comparison 11
concern 37
concerned 21
confidence 55
cons 21
consideration 52
control 55
corner 20, 39
corners 37
cost N 33
cost v 16
count 50
courage 28
cover 33
crack 49
crazy 28
cross 10, 23, 27
cry 27
cup 39, 46
cut N 43
cut v 37
cut out 36
damn 44
dare 30
dark 14
dash 20
date 49
dawn 49
day 8, 33, 39, 49
days 3, 11
death 3
debt 33
depend 1, 3
depth 51
die 44
diet 34
difference 42
distance 1
don’t 2, 44
don’ts 9
done 19
door 26
doorstep 3
dos 9
dot 49
doubt 21
down ADV 27, 54
downs N 29
dozens 50
dream 37
drive 29
drop 14
dumps 27
duty 55
ear 9
earliest 20
early 2, 3, 11, 32, 48, 54
earth 1, 16
ease 25
easy 40, 59
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sardines</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>3, 14, 17, 18, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratch</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>season</td>
<td>41, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>18, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense</td>
<td>1, 9, 10, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seriously</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>23, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape</td>
<td>40, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>28, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoestring</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>30, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show-off</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sick</td>
<td>27, 32, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>31, 51, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>28, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slip</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>20, 30, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soon</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sooner</td>
<td>554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorry</td>
<td>19, 22, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>15, 22, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spite</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spur</td>
<td>12, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>2, 25, 43, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>standstill</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>N 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start v</td>
<td>11, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starve</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>1, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>1, 3, 10, 21, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steer</td>
<td>1, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stiff</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stone</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straight</td>
<td>12, 55, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stretch N</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stretch v</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stuff</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sudden</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supposed</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sure</td>
<td>34, 40, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swap</td>
<td>2, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swing</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>29, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk</td>
<td>15, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>39, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear v</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tears N</td>
<td>24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>18, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telling</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temper</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term N</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terms N</td>
<td>22, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank v</td>
<td>2, 19, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks N</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theory</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>9, 17, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>1, 3, 21, 46, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td>18, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>11, 12, 21, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoughts</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrilled</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>2, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time N</td>
<td>17, 20, 27, 28, 30, 36, 39, 41, 43, 49, 50, 51, 57, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>times N</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip</td>
<td>8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiptoe</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>10, 42, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toss N</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toss v</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>total</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch N</td>
<td>11, 14, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch v</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trial</td>
<td>2, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trick</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>24, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
truth 18
try N 13
try v 10
tune 55
turn v 32
turns N 8
twenties 50
twice 12, 41	two 50
type 28
under 55
understood 9
up ADV 11, 17, 20, 21, 37, 54
up to sb 17
up to sth 36
upper 58
ups N 29
use 8, 34
usual 17
vain 3, 35
vicious 37
view 24
wait 28, 49, 54
wall 29
waste 49
water 33
way 2, 3, 20, 22, 24, 30, 37, 54, 55, 59, 60
ways 21, 25
weight 11
well 19, 33, 53
what 17
whatever 34, 60, 18
when 17
whole 21, 25
why 17
wide 32
wink 32
without 44
wood 3
word N 14, 15, 51, 54
words N 2
working 55
world 10, 11, 28, 37
worlds 25
worried 32
worse 11, 36, 37
worst 11, 30
worth 33
write-off 47
writing 55
wrong 11, 22, 28

years 50
yes 19
yet 3
young 59
yourself 12, 18, 25, 26, 30
Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Extend your Oxford Word Skills - learn all the idioms and phrasal verbs you need to know at Intermediate and Advanced levels.

- See how idioms are used naturally in spoken and written English.
- Learn the phrasal verbs you need to know for the major exams.
- Practise using the idioms and phrasal verbs as you learn them, and revise what you’ve learned.
- Look online for fascinating information on the history of idioms – with regular updates.
- Part of the Oxford Word Skills series.

Ideal for self-study

For intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt